APPENDIX C
CODE CHANGE PROPOSAL
NORTH CAROLINA
BUILDING CODE COUNCIL

B-1

B-18: Resubmitted on 12/12/23 for consideration with formatted review aid requested by the Rules Review Commission of the NC Office of Administrative Hearings.

325 North Salisbury Street, Room 5_44
Raleigh, North Carolina 27603
(919) 647-0009
carl.martin@ncdoi.gov

Petition for Rule Making Item Number _____

Granted by BCC	_____	**Adopted by BCC**	_____	**Approved by RRC**	_____
Denied by BCC	_____	**Disapproved by BCC**	_____	**Objection by RRC**	_____

PROPONENT: BCC Mechanical Standing Committee PHONE: (919) 888-0284
REPRESENTING: BCC Mechanical Standing Committee
ADDRESS: Mail Service Center 1202
CITY: Raleigh STATE: NC ZIP: 27699-1202
E-MAIL: carl.martin@ncdoi.gov FAX: (___) -

North Carolina State Building Code, Volume 2024 NC Mechanical Code Section_____

CHECK ONE: [ ] Revise section to read as follows: [ ] Delete section and substitute the following:
[X] Add new section to read as follows: [ ] Delete section without substitution:

~~LINE THROUGH MATERIAL TO BE DELETED~~ UNDERLINE MATERIAL TO BE ADDED

Please type. Continue proposal or reason on plain paper attached to this form. See reverse side for instructions.

The 2024 NCMC is based on the 2021 IMC which can be viewed at: **Digital Codes (iccsafe.org)**
The NC amendments to the 2021 IMC that make up 2024 NCMC are shown in ATTACHMENT A below

Will this proposal change the cost of construction?	Decrease	[ ]	Increase	[ ]	No	[X]
Will this proposal increase to the cost of a dwelling by $80 or more?			Yes	[ ]	No	[X]
Will this proposal affect the Local or State funds?	Local	[ ]	State	[ ]	No	[X]
Will this proposal cause a substantial economic impact (≥$1,000,000)?			Yes	[ ]	No	[X]

- Non-Substantial – Provide an economic analysis including benefit/cost estimates.
- Substantial – The economic analysis must also include 2-alternatives, time value of money and risk analysis.
- Pursuant to §143-138(a1)(2) a cost-benefit analysis is required for all proposed amendments to the NC Energy Conservation Code. The Building Code Council shall also require same for the NC Residential Code, Chapter 11.

REASON: This amendment is proposed to protect the public by updating the code to current standards of practice.

BCC CODE CHANGES

Signature: *CARL MARTIN* Date: May 1, 2023 FORM 11/26/19

ATTACHMENT A

THIS DOCUMENT CONTAINS PROPOSED NORTH CAROLINA AMENDMENTS TO THE 2021 EDITION OF THE INTERNTATIONAL MECHANICAL CODE (IMC) FOR THE PURPOSE OF ESTABLISHING THE 2024 EDITION OF THE NORTH CAROLINA MECHANICAL CODE.

UNDERLINED TEXT INDICATE NORTH CAROLINA PROPOSED AMENDMENTS TO THE 2021 INTERNATIONAL MECHANICAL CODE FOR THE 2024 NORTH CAROLINA MECHANICAL CODE.

~~STRUCKTHROUGH~~ TEXT INDICATES IMC TEXT THAT IS PROPOSED TO BE REMOVED FROM THE 2024 NORTH CAROLINA MECHANICAL CODE.

TEXT THAT IS HIGHLIGHTED IN YELLOW INDICATES PROPOSED NORTH CAROLINA AMENDMENTS THAT ARE NEW OR DIFFERRENT THAN THE 2018 NORTH CAROLINA MECHANICAL CODE.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:** Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement. Section 101 identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.~~

~~*The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.*~~

SECTION 101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[A] 101.1 Title. ~~These regulations shall be known as the *Mechanical Code* of **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**, hereinafter referred to as "this code."~~ These regulations shall be known as the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on September 12, 2023 to be effective January 1, 2025. References to the *International Codes* shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The North Carolina amendments to the *International Codes* are underlined.

[A] 101.2 Scope. This code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within buildings. This code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and *appliances* specifically addressed herein. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired *appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height shall comply with ~~this code or~~ the *International Residential Code*.

[A] 101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted or referenced in this code.

[A] 101.3 Purpose. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of mechanical *equipment* or systems.

101.5 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing boards or commissions. The *North Carolina State Building Codes* do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, registered design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

[A] 102.2.1 Existing buildings. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs related to building or structural issues shall be regulated by the *International Existing Building Code*.

[A] 102.3 Maintenance. Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

~~The inspection for maintenance of HVAC systems shall be performed in accordance with ASHRAE/ACCA/ANSI Standard 180.~~

[A] 102.5 Change in occupancy. It shall be unlawful to make a change in the *occupancy* of any structure that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new *occupancy* without approval. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing *building* construction for the proposed new *occupancy* and that such change of *occupancy* does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

SECTION 103
CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

[A] 103.1 Creation of agency. The department of mechanical inspection**[NAME OF DEPARTMENT]** is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the code official. The function of the agency shall be the implementation, administration and enforcement of the provisions of this code.

[A] 103.2 Appointment. The code official shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

[A] 103.3 Deputies. In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the code official shall have the authority to appoint a deputy code official, other related technical officers, inspectors and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the code official. *

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

[A] 104.1 General. The code official is hereby authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this code. The code official shall have the authority to render interpretations of this code and to adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of its provisions. Such interpretations, policies and procedures shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code. Such policies and procedures shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in this code.

[A] 104.2 Applications and permits. The code official shall receive applications, review *construction documents* and issue permits for the installation and *alteration* of mechanical systems, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.3 Inspections. The code official shall make all of the required inspections, or shall accept reports of inspection by *approved* agencies or individuals. Reports of such inspections shall be in writing and be certified by a responsible officer of such *approved* agency or by the responsible individual. The code official is authorized to engage such expert opinion as deemed necessary to report on unusual technical issues that arise, subject to the approval of the appointing authority.

[A] 104.4 Right of entry. Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this code, or where the code official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a building or on any premises any conditions or violations of this code that make the building or premises unsafe, insanitary, dangerous or hazardous, the code official shall have the authority to enter the building or premises at all reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed on the code official by this code. If such building or premises is occupied, the code official shall present credentials to the occupant and request entry. If such building or premises is unoccupied, the code official shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner, the owner's authorized agent or other person having charge or control of the building or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the code official has recourse to every remedy provided by law to secure entry.

Where the code official has first obtained a proper inspection warrant or other remedy provided by law to secure entry, the owner, owner's authorized agent or occupant or person having charge, care or control of the building or premises shall not fail or neglect, after proper request is made as herein provided, to promptly permit entry therein by the code official for the purpose of inspection and examination pursuant to this code.

[A] 104.5 Identification. The code official shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under this code.

[A] 104.6 Notices and orders. The code official shall issue all necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with this code.

[A] 104.7 Department records. The code official shall keep official records of applications received, permits and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records shall be retained in the official records for the period required for retention of public records. **

[A] 104.8 Liability. The code official, member of the board of appeals or employee charged with the enforcement of this code, while acting for the jurisdiction in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by this code or other

~~pertinent law or ordinance, shall not thereby be rendered civilly or criminally liable personally, and is hereby relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of an act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties.~~

~~**[A] 104.8.1 Legal defense.** Any suit or criminal complaint instituted against any officer or employee because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the provisions of this code shall be defended by the legal representatives of the jurisdiction until the final termination of the proceedings. The code official or any subordinate shall not be liable for costs in an action, suit or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of this code.~~

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

[A] 105.2 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the *code official* shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

[A] 105.5 Material, equipment and appliance reuse. Materials, *equipment*, *appliances* and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested and placed in good and proper working condition and *approved*.

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional guidance.

~~**[A] 106.1.1 Annual permit.** Instead of an individual construction permit for each alteration to an already *approved* system or *equipment* or application installation, the code official is authorized to issue an annual permit upon application therefor to any person, firm or corporation regularly employing one or more qualified tradespersons in the building, structure or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the permit.~~

~~**[A] 106.1.2 Annual permit records.** The person to whom an annual permit is issued shall keep a detailed record of alterations made under such annual permit. The code official shall have access to such records at all times or such records shall be filed with the code official as designated.~~

[A] 106.2 Permits not required. Permits shall not be required for the following:

1. Portable heating *appliances*.
2. Portable ventilation *appliances* and *equipment*.
3. Portable cooling units.
4. Steam, hot water or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling *equipment* or *appliances* regulated by this code.
5. The replacement of any minor part that does not alter the approval of *equipment* or an *appliance* or make such *equipment* or *appliance* unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative coolers.
7. Self-contained refrigeration systems that contain 10 pounds (4.5 kg) or less of refrigerant, or that are actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (0.75 kW) or less.
8. Portable fuel cell *appliances* that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for work to be done in violation of the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

[A] 106.3 Application for permit. Each application for a permit, with the required fee, shall be filed with the code official on a form furnished for that purpose and shall contain a general description of the proposed work and its location. The application shall be signed by the owner or the owner's authorized agent. The permit application shall indicate the proposed *occupancy* of all parts of the building and of that portion of the site or lot, if any, not covered by the building or structure and shall contain such other information required by the code official. *

[A] 106.3.1 Preliminary inspection. Before a permit is issued, the code official is authorized to inspect and evaluate the systems, *equipment*, buildings, devices, premises and spaces or areas to be used.

[A] 106.3.2 Time limitation of application. An application for a permit for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned 180 days after the date of filing, unless such application has been pursued in good faith or a permit has been issued; except that the code official shall have the authority to grant one or more extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

[A] 106.4 Permit issuance. The application, *construction documents* and other data filed by an applicant for a permit shall be reviewed by the code official. If the code official finds that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of this code and all laws and ordinances applicable thereto, and that the fees specified in Section 109.1 have been paid, a permit shall be issued to the applicant.

[A] 106.4.1 Approved construction documents. When the code official issues the permit where *construction documents* are required, the *construction documents* shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "*APPROVED*." Such *approved construction documents* shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the code official. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved construction documents*.

The code official shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of a mechanical system before the *construction documents* for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holder of such permit shall proceed at his or her own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire mechanical system will be granted.

[A] 106.4.2 Validity. The issuance of a permit or approval of *construction documents* shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. A permit presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code shall be invalid.

The issuance of a permit based on *construction documents* and other data shall not prevent the code official from thereafter requiring the correction of errors in said *construction documents* and other data or from preventing building operations from being carried on thereunder where in violation of this code or of other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

[A] 106.4.3 Expiration. Every permit issued by the code official under the provisions of this code shall expire by limitation and become null and void if the work authorized by such permit is not commenced within 180 days from the date of such permit, or if the work authorized by such permit is suspended or abandoned at any time after the work is commenced for a period of 180 days. Before such work recommences, a new permit shall be first obtained and the fee therefor shall be one half the amount required for a new permit for such work, provided that changes have not been made and will not be made in the original *construction documents* for such work, and provided further that such suspension or abandonment has not exceeded one year.

[A] 106.4.4 Extensions. A permittee holding an unexpired permit shall have the right to apply for an extension of the time within which the permittee will commence work under that permit where work is unable to be commenced within the time required by this section for good and satisfactory reasons. The code official shall extend the time for action by the permittee for a period not exceeding 180 days if there is reasonable cause. A permit shall not be extended more than once. The fee for an extension shall be one half the amount required for a new permit for such work.

[A] 106.4.5 Suspension or revocation of permit. The code official shall have the authority to suspend or revoke a permit issued under the provisions of this code wherever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code. *

[A] 106.4.6 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the *construction documents*, construction or designated *occupancy* of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

~~**[A] 106.4.7 Posting of permit.** The permit or a copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project.~~ *****

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional permitting requirements.

SECTION 107
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS **

~~**[A] 107.1 Construction documents.** *Construction documents*, engineering calculations, diagrams and other data shall be submitted in two or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the building official, with each application for a permit. The code official shall require *construction documents*, computations and specifications to be prepared and designed by a *registered design professional* where required by state law. Where special conditions exist, the code official is authorized to require additional *construction documents* to be prepared by a *registered design professional*. *Construction documents* shall be drawn to scale and shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that the work conforms to the provisions of this code. *Construction documents* for buildings more than two stories in height shall indicate where penetrations will be made for mechanical systems, and the materials and methods for maintaining required structural safety, fire resistance rating and fireblocking.~~

~~**Exception:** The code official shall have the authority to waive the submission of *construction documents*, calculations or other data if the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of *construction documents* is not necessary to determine compliance with this code.~~

~~**[A] 107.2 Retention of construction documents.** One set of *approved construction documents* shall be retained by the code official for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws. One set of *approved construction documents* shall be returned to the applicant, and said set shall be kept on the site of the building or job at all times during which the work authorized thereby is in progress.~~

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

SECTION 108
NOTICE OF APPROVAL **

~~**[A] 108.1 Approval.** After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the code official.~~

~~**[A] 108.2 Revocation.** The code official is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the notice is issued in error, on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure, premise or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.~~

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

** SECTION 109
FEES

~~**[A] 109.1 Payment of fees.** A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by law have been paid. An amendment to a permit shall not be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.~~

~~**[A] 109.2 Schedule of permit fees.** Where work requires a permit, a fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.~~

~~**[A] 109.3 Permit valuations.** The applicant for a permit shall provide an estimated permit value at the time of application. Permit valuations shall reflect the total value of work, including materials and labor, for which the permit is being issued, such as mechanical *equipment* and permanent systems. If, in the opinion of the code official, the valuation is underestimated on the application, the permit shall be denied unless the applicant can show detailed estimates to meet the approval of the code official.~~ **

~~Final building permit valuation shall be set by the code official.~~

~~**[A] 109.4 Work commencing before permit issuance.** Any person who commences work on a mechanical system before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to a fee established by the code official that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.~~

~~**[A] 109.5 Related fees.** The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal or demolition for work done in connection to or concurrently with the work authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.~~

~~**[A] 109.6 Refunds.** The code official is authorized to establish a refund policy.~~ *

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

SECTION 110
SERVICE UTILITIES **

~~**[A] 110.1 Connection of service utilities.** A person shall not make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any building or system that is regulated by this code for which a permit is required, until authorized by the code official.~~

~~**[A] 110.2 Temporary connection.** The code official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility, source of energy, fuel, power, water system or sewer system for the purpose of testing systems or for use under a temporary approval.~~

~~**[A] 110.3 Authority to disconnect service utilities.** The code official shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or system regulated by this code and the referenced codes and standards in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property or where such utility connection has been made without the approval required by Section 110.1 or 110.2. The code official shall notify the serving utility, and wherever possible the owner or the owner's authorized agent and occupant of the building, structure or service system, of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner, the owner's authorized agent or occupant of the building, structure or service system shall be notified in writing as soon as practical thereafter.~~

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

** SECTION 111
TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES

[A] 111.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary *equipment*, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

[A] 111.2 Conformance. Temporary *equipment*, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

[A] 111.3 Temporary utilities. The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

[A] 111.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary *equipment*, systems or uses and to order the temporary *equipment*, systems or uses to be discontinued.

** SECTION 112
INSPECTIONS AND TESTING

~~**[A] 112.1 General.** The code official is authorized to conduct such inspections as are deemed necessary to determine compliance with the provisions of this code. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid.~~

~~**[A] 112.2 Required inspections and testing.** The code official, upon notification from the permit holder or the permit holder's agent, shall make the following inspections and other such inspections as necessary, and shall either release that portion of the construction or shall notify the permit holder or the permit holder's agent of violations that must be corrected. The holder of the permit shall be responsible for the scheduling of such inspections.~~

~~1. Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated and bedded, piping installed, and before backfill is put in place. Where excavated soil contains rocks, broken concrete, frozen chunks and other rubble that would damage or break the piping or cause corrosive action, clean backfill shall be on the job site.~~

~~2. Rough-in inspection shall be made after the roof, framing, fireblocking and bracing are in place and all ducting and other components to be concealed are complete, and prior to the installation of wall or ceiling membranes.~~

~~3. Final inspection shall be made upon completion of the mechanical system.~~

~~**Exception:** Ground-source heat pump loop systems tested in accordance with Section 1210.10 shall be permitted to be back-filled prior to inspection.~~

~~The requirements of this section shall not be considered to prohibit the operation of any heating *equipment* or *appliances* installed to replace existing heating *equipment* or *appliances* serving an occupied portion of a structure provided that a request for inspection of such heating *equipment* or *appliances* has been filed with the department not more than 48 hours after such replacement work is completed, and before any portion of such *equipment* or *appliances* is concealed by any permanent portion of the structure.~~

~~**[A] 112.2.1 Other inspections.** In addition to the inspections specified in Section 108.2, the code official is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced.~~

~~**[A] 112.2.2 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the code official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide *access* to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.~~

~~**[A] 112.2.3 Approval required.** Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the code official. The code official, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or notify the permit holder or his or her agent wherein the same fails to comply with this code. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the code official.~~

~~**[A] 112.2.4 Approved inspection agencies.** The code official is authorized to accept reports of *approved* agencies, provided that such agencies satisfy the requirements as to qualifications and reliability.~~

~~**[A] 112.2.5 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services.** Prior to the approval of a prefabricated construction assembly having concealed mechanical work and the issuance of a mechanical permit, the code official shall require the submittal of an evaluation report on each prefabricated construction assembly, indicating the complete details of the mechanical system, including a description of the system and its components, the basis on which the system is being evaluated, test results and similar information, and other data as necessary for the code official to determine conformance to this code.~~

[A] 112.2.5.1 Evaluation service. The code official shall designate the evaluation service of an *approved* agency as the evaluation agency, and review such agency's evaluation report for adequacy and conformance to this code.

[A] 112.2.5.2 Follow-up inspection. Except where ready access is provided to mechanical systems, service *equipment* and accessories for complete inspection at the site without disassembly or dismantling, the code official shall conduct the in-plant inspections as frequently as necessary to ensure conformance to the *approved* evaluation report or shall designate an independent, *approved* inspection agency to conduct such inspections. The inspection agency shall furnish the code official with the follow-up inspection manual and a report of inspections on request, and the mechanical system shall have an identifying label permanently affixed to the system indicating that factory inspections have been performed.

[A] 112.2.5.3 Test and inspection records. Required test and inspection records shall be available to the code official at all times during the fabrication of the mechanical system and the erection of the building; or such records as the code official designates shall be filed.

[A] 112.3 Testing. Mechanical systems shall be tested as required in this code and in accordance with Sections 108.3.1 through 108.3.3. Tests shall be made by the permit holder and observed by the code official.

[A] 112.3.1 New, altered, extended or repaired systems. New mechanical systems and parts of existing systems, which have been altered, extended, renovated or repaired, shall be tested as prescribed herein to disclose leaks and defects.

[A] 112.3.2 Apparatus, material and labor for tests. Apparatus, material and labor required for testing a mechanical system or part thereof shall be furnished by the permit holder.

[A] 112.3.3 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made so as to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the code official for inspection and testing. *

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

SECTION 113
MEANS OF APPEALS

[A] 113.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the code official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the applicable governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the code official. **

[A] 113.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equivalent or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have the authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

[A] 113.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

[A] 113.4 Administration. The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

SECTION 114
BOARD OF APPEALS

[A] 114.1 Membership of board. The board of appeals shall consist of five members appointed by the chief appointing authority as follows: one for 5 years; one for 4 years; one for 3 years; one for 2 years; and one for 1 year. Thereafter, each new member shall serve for 5 years or until a successor has been appointed.

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

** SECTION 115
VIOLATIONS

[A] 115.1 Unlawful acts. It shall be unlawful for a person, firm or corporation to erect, construct, alter, repair, remove, demolish or utilize a mechanical system, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of this code.

[A] 115.2 Notice of violation. The code official shall serve a notice of violation or order to the person responsible for the erection, installation, *alteration*, extension, repair, removal or demolition of mechanical work in violation of the provisions of this code, or in violation of a detail statement or the *approved construction documents* thereunder, or in violation of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code. Such order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and the abatement of the violation.

[A] 115.3 Prosecution of violation. If the notice of violation is not complied with promptly, the code official shall request the legal counsel of the jurisdiction to institute the appropriate proceeding at law or in equity to restrain, correct or abate such violation, or to require the removal or termination of the unlawful *occupancy* of the structure in violation of the provisions of this code or of the order or direction made pursuant thereto.

[A] 115.4 Violation penalties. Persons who shall violate a provision of this code or shall fail to comply with any of the requirements thereof or who shall erect, install, alter or repair mechanical work in violation of the *approved construction documents* or directive of the code official, or of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code, shall be guilty of a **[SPECIFY OFFENSE]**, punishable by a fine of not more than **[AMOUNT]** dollars or by imprisonment not exceeding **[NUMBER OF DAYS]**, or both such fine and imprisonment. Each day that a violation continues after due notice has been served shall be deemed a separate offense.

[A] 115.5 Abatement of violation. The imposition of the penalties herein prescribed shall not preclude the legal officer of the jurisdiction from instituting appropriate action to prevent unlawful construction or to restrain, correct or abate a violation, or to prevent illegal *occupancy* of a building, structure or premises, or to stop an illegal act, conduct, business or utilization of the mechanical system on or about any premises.

[A] 115.6 Unsafe mechanical systems. A mechanical system that is unsafe, constitutes a fire or health hazard, or is otherwise dangerous to human life, as regulated by this code, is hereby declared as an unsafe mechanical system. Use of a mechanical system regulated by this code constituting a hazard to health, safety or welfare by reason of inadequate maintenance, dilapidation, fire hazard, disaster, damage or abandonment is hereby declared an unsafe use. Such unsafe *equipment* and *appliances* are hereby declared to be a public nuisance and shall be abated by repair, rehabilitation, demolition or removal.

[A] 115.6.1 Authority to condemn mechanical systems. Where the code official determines that any mechanical system, or portion thereof, regulated by this code has become hazardous to life, health, property, or has become insanitary, the code official shall order in writing that such system either be removed or restored to a safe condition. A time limit for compliance with such order shall be specified in the written notice. A person shall not use or maintain a defective mechanical system after receiving such notice.

Where such mechanical system is to be disconnected, written notice as prescribed in Section 115.2 shall be given. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection shall be made immediately without such notice.

[A] 115.6.2 Authority to order disconnection of energy sources. The code official shall have the authority to order disconnection of energy sources supplied to a building, structure or mechanical system regulated by this code, where it is determined that the mechanical system or any portion thereof has become hazardous or unsafe. Written notice of such order to disconnect service and the causes therefor shall be given within 24 hours to the owner, the owner's authorized agent and occupant of such building, structure or premises, provided, however, that in cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection

shall be made immediately without such notice. Where energy sources are provided by a public utility, the code official shall immediately notify the serving utility in writing of the issuance of such order to disconnect.

[A] 115.6.3 Connection after order to disconnect. A person shall not make energy source connections to mechanical systems regulated by this code that have been disconnected or ordered to be disconnected by the code official, or the use of which has been ordered to be discontinued by the code official until the code official authorizes the reconnection and use of such mechanical systems.

Where a mechanical system is maintained in violation of this code, and in violation of a notice issued pursuant to the provisions of this section, the code official shall institute appropriate action to prevent, restrain, correct or abate the violation.

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

SECTION 116
STOP WORK ORDER

[A] 116.1 Authority. Where the code official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

[A] 116.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

[A] 116.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the code official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

[A] 116.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:** Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.~~

ABSORPTION SYSTEM. A refrigerating system in which refrigerant is pressurized by pumping a chemical solution of refrigerant in absorbent, and then separated by the addition of heat in a generator, condensed (to reject heat), expanded, evaporated (to provide refrigeration), and reabsorbed in an absorber to repeat the cycle; the system can be single or multiple effect, the latter using multiple stages or internally cascaded use of heat to improve efficiency.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction [see also *Ready access (to)*].

AIR. Air supplied to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* for *combustion*, ventilation, cooling and similar purposes. Standard air is air at standard temperature and pressure, namely, 70ºF (21ºC) and 29.92 inches of mercury (101.3 kPa).

AIR, EXHAUST. Air being removed from any space, *appliance* or piece of *equipment* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts. Relief air is classified as *exhaust air*.

AIR, MAKEUP. Any combination of outdoor and transfer air intended to replace *exhaust air* and exfiltration.

AIR CONDITIONING. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a *conditioned space*.

AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Any system of ducts, *plenums* and air-handling *equipment* that circulates air within a space or spaces and includes systems made up of one or more air-handling units.

APPLIANCE, EXISTING. Any *appliance* regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official, or other authority having jurisdiction, for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests, furnishing inspection services or furnishing product certification where such agency has been approved by the code official.

BALANCED VENTILATION. Any combination of concurrently operating mechanical exhaust and mechanical supply whereby the total mechanical exhaust airflow rate is within 10 percent of the total mechanical supply airflow rate.

BATHROOM. A room containing a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture (see also "Toilet room.").

BOILER. A closed heating *appliance* intended to supply hot water or steam for space heating, processing or power purposes. Low-pressure boilers operate at pressures less than or equal to 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103 kPa) for steam and 160 psi (1103 kPa) for water. High-pressure boilers operate at pressures exceeding those pressures. See N.C.G.S. Chapter 95, Article 7A and 13 NCAC 13 for specific requirements on boilers and references to the North Carolina Department of Labor.

BRAZED JOINT. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures or alloys that melt at a temperature above 1,000ºF (538ºC), but lower than the melting temperature of the parts to be joined.

[A] BUILDING. Any structure utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any *occupancy*.

CARBON MONOXIDE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm intended to detect carbon monoxide gas and alert occupants by a distinct audible signal. It incorporates a sensor, control components and an alarm notification appliance in a single unit.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR. A device with an integral sensor to detect carbon monoxide gas and transmit an alarm signal to a connected alarm control unit.

[BF] CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. Ceiling radiation

dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic ceiling radiation damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

CLOSET. An enclosed or recessed area used to store clothing, linens or other household items.

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. *Appliances* used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food. For the purpose of this definition, a commercial food service establishment is where food is prepared for sale or is prepared on a scale that is by volume and frequency not representative of domestic household cooking.

COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS.

Backshelf hood. A backshelf hood is also referred to as a low-proximity hood, or as a sidewall hood where wall mounted. Its front lower lip is low over the *appliance*(s) and is "set back" from the front of the *appliance*(*s*). It is always closed to the rear of the *appliances* by a panel where free-standing, or by a panel or wall where wall mounted, and its height above the cooking surface varies. (This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operation.)

Double island canopy hood. A double island canopy hood is placed over back-to-back *appliances* or *appliance* lines. It is open on all sides and overhangs both fronts and the sides of the *appliance*(s). It could have a wall panel between the backs of the *appliances*. (The fact that *exhaust air* is drawn from both sides of the double canopy to meet in the center causes each side of this hood to emulate a wall canopy hood, and thus it functions much the same with or without an actual wall panel between the backs of the *appliances*.)

Eyebrow hood. An eyebrow hood is mounted directly to the face of an *appliance*, such as an oven and dishwasher, above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, extending past the sides and overhanging the front of the opening to capture the effluent.

Pass-over hood. A pass-over hood is a free-standing form of a backshelf hood constructed low enough to pass food over the top.

Single island canopy hood. A single island canopy hood is placed over a single *appliance* or *appliance* line. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear and sides of the *appliance*(s). A single island canopy is more susceptible to cross drafts and requires a greater exhaust airflow than an equivalent sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

Wall canopy hood. A wall canopy exhaust hood is mounted against a wall above a single *appliance* or line of *appliance*(s), or it could be free-standing with a back panel from the rear of the *appliances* to the hood. It overhangs the front and sides of the *appliance*(s) on all open sides.

The wall acts as a back panel, forcing the *makeup air* to be drawn across the front of the cooking *equipment*, thus increasing the effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

CONDITIONED SPACE. ~~For purposes of this code, an~~ An area, room or space that is enclosed within the building thermal envelope and that is directly heated or cooled or that is indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

COOKING APPLIANCE. See *Commercial cooking appliances*.

DIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates directly into the air stream, reducing the air's dry-bulb temperature and raising its humidity level.

DIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

[FG] DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES. *Appliances* that are constructed and installed so that all air for *combustion* is derived from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is gravity drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts. This does not include compressed air or vacuum systems.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, *plenums*, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment* and *appliances*.

[A] DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from or reject energy to *exhaust air* for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor *ventilation air* prior to supplying such air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENVIRONMENTAL AIR. Air that is conveyed to or from occupied areas through ducts that are not part of the heating or air-conditioning system, such as ventilation for human usage, domestic kitchen range exhaust, bathroom exhaust, domestic clothes dryer exhaust and parking garage exhaust.

EQUIPMENT. Piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than *appliances* that are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for buildings. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

EVAPORATIVE COOLING SYSTEM. The *equipment* and *appliances* intended or installed for the purpose of environmental cooling by an evaporative cooler from which the conditioned air is distributed through ducts or *plenums* to the conditioned area.

EXHAUST SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers, grilles and hoods through which air is conducted from the space or spaces and exhausted to the outdoor atmosphere.

EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Extra-heavy-duty cooking *appliances* are those utilizing open flame combustion of solid fuel at any time.

FLAMMABILITY CLASSIFICATION (REFRIGERANT). The alphabetical/numerical designation used to identify the flammability of refrigerants.

Class 1. Indicates a refrigerant with no flame propogation.

Class 2. Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability.

Class 2L. Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability and low burning velocity.

Class 3. Indicates a refrigerant with high flammability.

FLEXIBLE AIR CONNECTOR. A conduit for transferring air between an air duct or *plenum* and an air terminal unit or between an air duct or *plenum* and an air inlet or air outlet. Such conduit is limited in its use, length and location.

FLUE CONNECTION (BREECHING). A passage for conducting the products of *combustion* from a fuel-fired *appliance* to the vent or *chimney* (see also *Chimney connector* and *Vent connector*).

[FG] FLUE GASES. Products of *combustion* and excess air.

FOOD-GRADE FLUID. Potable water or a fluid containing additives listed in accordance with the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186.

FURNACE ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of fuel-burning, space-heating and water-heating *appliances* other than boilers (see also *Boiler room*).

HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Heavy-duty cooking *appliances* include electric under-fired broilers, electric chain (conveyor) broilers, gas under-fired broilers, gas chain (conveyor) broilers, gas open-burner ranges (with or without oven), electric and gas wok ranges, smokers, smoker ovens, and electric and gas over-fired (upright) broilers and salamanders. Such an *appliance* shall not use solid fuel to provide a source of heat for cooking. Pellets and chips if used as flavoring shall not be in a state of open flame combustion at any time. Smoldering chambers shall not introduce embers into the flue at any time.

[FG] HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen generating *appliances* utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical, or other processes to generate hydrogen.

INDIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates into a secondary air stream, removing heat from a primary air stream utilizing a heat exchanger.

INDIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

JOINT, MECHANICAL

1. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered, solvent cemented or heat fused.

2. A general form of gas or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections. These joints include both the press-type and push-fit joining systems. Also see press-connect joint and push-fit joint.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. A joint made in thermoset plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

JOINT, PLASTIC SOLVENT CEMENT. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by the use of a solvent or solvent cement that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces.

JOINT, SOLDERED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures of alloys that melt at temperatures between 400ºF (204ºC) and 1,000ºF (538ºC).

[A] LABELED. *Appliances, ~~Equipment,~~ equipment,* materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the *appliance, equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. ~~(Laboratories, agencies or organizations that have been identified by approval and accreditation bodies, such as ANSI, IAS, ICC or OSHA, are acceptable.)~~

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) in diameter. These fans are also referred to as high-volume, low-speed (HVLS) fans.

[A] LISTED. *Appliances, ~~Equipment,~~ equipment,* materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *appliance, equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. Refer to:

https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/state-electrical-division/qualified-testing-laboratories for a list of North Carolina Approved Third-Party Certification Agencies for electrical and mechanical equipment categories.

LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL). See *LFL*.

LOW-PROBABILITY PUMP. A pump that is designed to prevent atmospheric release of the pumped fluid by one of the following methods:

1. The pump is permanently sealed.
2. The pump incorporates a static seal.
3. The pump incorporates not less than two sequential dynamic shaft seals to isolate the pumped fluid from atmosphere at shaft penetrations and automatically shuts down upon failure of any seal.

MACHINERY ROOM. An enclosed space that is required by Chapter 11 to contain refrigeration *equipment* and to comply with Sections 1105 and 1106.

MECHANICAL JOINT. See "Joint, mechanical."

~~1. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered, solvent cemented or heat fused.~~

~~2. A general form of gas- or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections.~~

MODULAR BOILER. A steam or hot-water-heating assembly consisting of a group of individual boilers called modules intended to be installed as a unit without intervening stop valves. Modules are under one jacket or are individually jacketed. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input rating of 400,000 Btu/h (117 228 W) gas, 3 gallons per hour (gph) (11.4 L/h) oil, or 115 kW (electric). See N.C.G.S. 95-69.8, 95-69.9 and 69.10 for specific requirements on boilers and references to the North Carolina Department of Labor.

NO-FLOW CONDITION (SOLAR). A condition where thermal energy is not transferred from a solar thermal collector by means of flow of a heat transfer fluid.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, have not fewer than three of four specimens tested meeting all of the following criteria:

1. The recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise more than 54ºF (30ºC) above the furnace temperature at the beginning of the test.
2. There shall not be flaming from the specimen after the first 30 seconds.
3. If the weight loss of the specimen during testing exceeds 50 percent, the recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise above the furnace air temperature at the beginning of the test, and there shall not be flaming of the specimen.

NONFOOD-GRADE FLUID. Any fluid that is not designated as a food-grade fluid.

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE LIMIT (OEL). The time-weighted average (TWA) concentration for a normal 8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek to which nearly all workers can be repeatedly exposed without adverse effect, based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, TERA OARS WEEL, or consistent value.

PIPING. Where used in this code, "piping" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.

Pipe. A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, copper-alloy, or plastic.

Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, copper-alloy, aluminum, plastic or steel.

POLLUTION-CONTROL UNIT (PCU). Manufactured *equipment"* that is installed in a grease exhaust duct system for the purpose of extracting smoke, grease particles and odors from the exhaust flow by means of a series of filters.

PORTABLE FUEL CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity that is not fixed in place. A portable fuel cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POWER BOILER. See *Boiler*.

PRESS-CONNECT JOINT. A permanent mechanical joint incorporating an elastomeric seal or an elastomeric seal and corrosion-resistant grip or bite ring. The joint is made with a pressing tool and jaw or ring approved by the fitting manufacturer.

PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY (REDUCED CLEARANCE). Any noncombustible assembly that is *labeled* or constructed in accordance with Table 308.4.2 and is placed between combustible materials or assemblies and mechanical *appliances*, devices or *equipment*, for the purpose of reducing required airspace *clearances*. Protective assemblies attached directly to a combustible assembly shall not be considered as part of that combustible assembly.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction [see *Access (to)*].

REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION. The alphabetical/numerical designation that indicates both the toxicity and flammability classifications of refrigerants.

Flammability. See *Flammability classification (Refrigerant)*.

Toxicity. See *Toxicity classification (Refrigerant)*.

~~**REFRIGERATED ROOM OR SPACE.** A room or space in which an evaporator or brine coil is located for the purpose of reducing or controlling the temperature within the room or space to below 68ºF (20ºC).~~

REFRIGERATION MACHINERY ROOM. See *Machinery room*.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. ~~Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under the registration or licensure laws.~~

RETURN AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air from the space or spaces to be heated or cooled is conducted back to the supply unit (see also *Supply air system*).

[A] SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not *sleeping units*.

SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. A system that converts solar radiation to thermal energy for use in heating or cooling.

[FG] STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages that constitute an automatically operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

SUPPLY AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air, heated or cooled, is conducted from the supply unit to the space or spaces to be heated or cooled (see also *Return air system*).

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer's quality control system.

Refer to:

https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/state-electrical-division/qualified-testing-laboratories for a list of North Carolina Approved Third-Party Certification Agencies for electrical and mechanical equipment categories.

TOXICITY CLASSIFICATION (REFRIGERANT). An alphabetical designation used to identify the toxicity of refrigerants. Class A indicates a refrigerant with low toxicity. Class B indicates a refrigerant with high toxicity.

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials that cannot be joined directly one to another.

[FG] UNIT HEATER. A self-contained *appliance* of the fan type, designed for the delivery of warm air directly into the space in which the *appliance* is located.

UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCE. A stationary, self-contained *appliance* intended to be directly or indirectly secured to a wall or floor and not intended for duct connection. Such *appliance* burns alcohol and is made in a manufacturing facility for subsequent delivery to the installation site.

VENT. A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying *combustion* products and air to the atmosphere, *listed* and *labeled* for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

Pellet vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with *listed* pellet-fuel-burning *appliances*.

Type L vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with the following:

1. Oil-burning *appliances* that are *listed* for use with Type L vents.
2. Gas-fired *appliances* that are *listed* for use with Type B vents.

[FG] VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar of an *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a *chimney* and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:** Chapter 3 contains broadly applicable requirements that are necessarily placed in an overarching "general" chapter. These general requirements would not be suitably located in any other chapter that is specific to unique subject matter. General requirements include those related to installation, access, location, testing, structural and clearances.~~

301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and *appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical systems regulated by this code in accordance with Section 101.2.

301.3 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer~~.~~ as required by the listing or standard for the piping or tubing.

301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be *third-party certified* ~~as conforming to NSF 14.~~ ~~(Deleted).~~ and meet the applicable standards listed in the *International Mechanical Code*.

301.7 Listed and labeled. *Appliances* regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section 105.

Exceptions:

1. Listing and labeling of *equipment* and *appliances* used for refrigeration shall be in accordance with Section 1101.2.
2. Field erected equipment shall be deemed acceptable, provided it is assembled using listed components and parts, if the design thereof is by a *registered design professional*.

301.8.1 Testing. An *approved* agency shall test a representative sample of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* being *labeled* to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved* agency shall maintain a record of all of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

301.8.2 Inspection and identification. The *approved* agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* to be *labeled*. The inspection shall verify that the *labeled* mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* are representative of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* tested.

301.9 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to *appliances* on which shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, serial number and the seal or mark of the *approved* agency. A label shall include the following:

1. Electrical *equipment* and *appliances*: Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts, motor phase; Btu/h (W) output; and required clearances.
2. Absorption units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls; type of fuel; type of refrigerant; cooling capacity in Btu/h (W); and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance*; and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort heating *appliances*: electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required *clearances* from combustibles.

301.10 Electrical. Electrical wiring, controls and connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with ~~NFPA 70~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

301.11 Plumbing connections. Potable water supply and building drainage system connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

301.12 Fuel types. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. *Appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the usage of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

301.13 Vibration isolation. Where vibration isolation of *equipment* and *appliances* is employed, an *approved* means of supplemental restraint shall be used to accomplish the support and restraint.

301.15 Wind resistance. Mechanical *equipment*, *appliances* and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

[BS] 301.16 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, mechanical systems, equipment and *appliances* shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant *equipment*.

Exception: Mechanical systems, *equipment* and *appliances* are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

301.17.1 Foundation and exterior wall sealing. Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such opening with cement mortar, concrete masonry, silicone caulking or noncorrosive metal.

301.18 Seismic resistance. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the *International Building Code*, mechanical system supports, anchorage and bracing shall be designed and installed for seismic forces in accordance with Chapter 16 of the *International Building Code*.

301.19 Pipe and duct penetrations. Openings for pipe and duct penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe or duct. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe and duct penetrations shall be protected in an *approved* manner in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

303.1 General. *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

303.2 Hazardous locations. *Appliances* shall not be located in a *hazardous location* unless *listed* and *approved* for the specific installation.

303.3 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall not be located in, or obtain *combustion* air from, any of the following rooms or spaces:

1. Sleeping rooms.
2. Bathrooms.
3. Toilet rooms.
4. Storage closets.
5. Surgical rooms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to the following *appliances*:

1. *Direct-vent appliances* that obtain all *combustion* air directly from the outdoors.
2. Solid fuel-fired *appliances*, provided that combustion air is provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. *Appliances* installed in a dedicated enclosure in which all *combustion* air is taken directly from the outdoors, in accordance with Chapter 7. *Access* to such enclosure shall be through a solid door, weather-stripped in accordance with the exterior door air leakage requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* and equipped with an *approved* self-closing device.

303.4 Protection from damage. *Appliances* shall not be installed in a location where subject to mechanical damage unless protected by *approved* barriers. ~~Protection is not required for *appliances* located out of the vehicle's normal travel path.~~

303.6 Outdoor locations. *Appliances* installed in other than indoor locations shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation.

303.7 Pit locations. *Appliances* installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil~~.~~ and shall be installed not less than ~~3 inches (76 mm)~~ 2 inches (51 mm) above the pit floor. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. Excavation on the control side of the *appliance* shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) horizontally. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

303.9 Fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies. Fuel-burning *appliances* and fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with Section 901.4.

304.1 General. *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

304.3 Elevation of ignition source. *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* and located in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor surface on which the *equipment* or *appliance* rests. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for *appliances* that are listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

304.3.1 Parking garages. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired *appliance* shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 304.3.

Exception: This section shall not apply to appliance installations complying with Section 304.6.

~~1. This section shall not apply to *appliance* installations complying with Section 304.6.~~

304.4 Prohibited equipment and appliance location. *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall not be installed in Group H *occupancies* or control areas where open use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

[FG] 304.5 Hydrogen-generating and refueling operations. Hydrogen-generating and refueling *appliances* shall be installed and located in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 304.5.1, 304.5.2 or 304.5.3 in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages that contain hydrogen-generating *appliances* or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

[FG] 304.5.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 304.5.1.1 and 304.5.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen-generating *appliances* shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (0.00189 m^3/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In such locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

[FG] 304.5.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16. In such locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation outlet(s).

304.6 Public garages. *Appliances* located in public garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles, shall be installed not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an *appliance*, the *appliance* shall be installed at the *clearances* required by the *appliance* manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3 and NFPA 30A.

304.7 Private garages. *Appliances* located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3.

304.9 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required *clearances* to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such *clearances* shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing, shutters, coverings and drapes. Devices such as doorstops or limits, closers, drapery ties or guards shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

304.10 Clearances from grade. *Equipment* and *appliances* installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than ~~3~~2 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

~~**304.10 Under-floor and exterior grade installations.**~~

~~**304.10.1 Exterior grade installations.** *Equipment* and *appliances* installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.~~

~~**304.10.2 Under-floor installation.** Suspended *equipment* shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade. See Section 603.14 for ductwork support heights.~~

~~**304.10.3 Crawl space supports.** A support shall be provided at each corner of the unit not less than 8 inches by 8 inches (203.2 mm by 203.2 mm). The unit shall be supported a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above grade. When constructed of brick, the bricks shall be mortared together.~~

~~All units stacked shall be mortared together. Fabricated units, formed concrete, or other approved materials shall be permitted.~~

~~**304.10.4 Drainage.** Below grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. For pit requirements, see Section 303.7~~

[BE] 304.11 Guards. Guards shall be provided where various *appliances*, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service and roof hatch openings are located within 10~~6~~ feet (3048 mm) ~~(1829 mm)~~ of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof, or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of components, *appliances*, *equipment*~~,~~ and fans ~~and roof hatch openings.~~that require service and each end of the roof hatch parallel to the roof edge. The top of the guard shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the elevated surface adjacent to the guard. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Guards are not required where fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSP Z359.1 are installed.
2. Guards not required at the time of original installation are not required by this section for *equipment* and *appliances* that are repaired or replaced.

304.12 Area served. *Appliances* serving different areas of a building other than where they are installed shall be permanently marked in an *approved* manner that uniquely identifies the *appliance* and the area it serves.

TABLE 305.4
PIPING SUPPORT SPACING[a]

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS pipe	4	10[c]
Aluminum pipe and tubing	10	15
Cast-iron pipe[b]	5	15
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing~~, 1 1/2-inch diameter and larger~~	~~6~~ 8	10
CPVC pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	3	10[c]
CPVC pipe or tubing, 1 1/4-inches and larger	4	10[c]
Lead pipe	Continuous	4
PB pipe or tubing	2 2/3 (32 inches)	4
PE-RT 1 inch and smaller	2 2/3 (32 inches)	10[c]
PE-RT 1 1/4 inches and larger	4	10[c]
PEX tubing 1 inch and smaller	2 2/3 (32 inches)	10[c]
PEX tubing 1 1/4 inches and larger	4	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	2 2/3 (32 inches)	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 1/4 inches and larger	4	10[c]
PVC pipe	4	10[c]
Steel pipe	12	15
Steel tubing	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. See Section 301.18.
b. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.
c. Mid-story guide.

~~306.1.1 Central furnaces.~~ ~~Deleted.~~

306.2 Appliances in rooms. Rooms containing *appliances* shall be provided with a door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 80 inches (2032 mm) high.

Exception: Within a *dwelling unit*, *appliances* installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided that a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), is present at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

306.3 Appliances in attics and above hard ceilings. Attics containing *appliances* shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is ~~unobstructed and~~ not less than 6 feet (~~1929~~1829 mm) high ~~and 22 inches (559 mm) wide~~ for its entire length, the passageway shall be not ~~greater than 50 feet (15 250 mm)~~ limited in length.

306.3.1 Electrical requirements~~ lighting outlet and receptacle~~. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* or *appliance* location in accordance with ~~NFPA 70~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle, and Article 210.70 (C) for lighting outlet and switch location.~~

306.4 Appliances under floors. Underfloor spaces containing *appliances* shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than ~~30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide~~, 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 22 inches high by 30 inches wide (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is ~~unobstructed and~~ not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high ~~and 22 inches (559 mm) wide~~ for its entire length, the passageway shall be not ~~greater than 50 feet (15 250 mm)~~ limited in length.

306.4.1 Electrical requirements~~ lighting outlet and receptacle~~. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* or *appliance* location in accordance with ~~NFPA 70~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle, and Article 210.70 (C) for lighting outlet and switch location.~~

306.5 Equipment and appliances on roofs or elevated structures. Where *equipment* or *appliances* requiring ~~access or *appliances* are~~ periodic maintenance are installed on, located on, or suspended from an elevated structure or the roof of a building such that personnel will have to climb higher than 16 feet (4877 mm) above grade or finished floor to access such *equipment* or *appliances*, an interior or exterior means of access shall be provided. Such access shall not require climbing over obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height or walking on roofs having a slope greater than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal

(33-percent slope). Such access shall not require the use of portable ladders. Where access involves climbing over parapet walls, the height shall be measured to the top of the parapet wall.

Exception: Where permanent means of access is technically infeasible, wall-mounted *equipment* and *appliance* maintenance, replacement and repairs that are over 16 feet can be serviced by motorized equipment upon approval. The owner/tenant shall provide a maintenance service and cleaning schedule contract that shall be renewed annually.

Permanent ladders installed to provide the required access shall comply with the following minimum design criteria:

1. The side railing shall extend above the parapet or roof edge not less than 30 inches (762 mm).
2. Ladders shall have rung spacing not to exceed 14 inches (356 mm) on center. The uppermost rung shall be not greater than 24 inches (610 mm) below the upper edge of the roof hatch, roof or parapet, as applicable.
3. Ladders shall have a toe spacing not less than 6 inches (152 mm) deep.
4. There shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) between rails.
5. Rungs shall have a diameter not less than 0.75-inch (19.1 mm) and be capable of withstanding a 300-pound (136 kg) load.
6. Ladders over 30 feet (9144 mm) in height shall be provided with offset sections and landings capable of withstanding 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/m^2). Landing dimensions shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) and not less than the width of the ladder served. A guard rail shall be provided on all open sides of the landing.
7. Climbing clearance. The distance from the centerline of the rungs to the nearest permanent object on the climbing side of the ladder shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) measured perpendicular to the rungs. This distance shall be maintained from the point of ladder access to the bottom of the roof hatch. A minimum clear width of 15 inches (381 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the ladder measured from the midpoint of and parallel with the rungs except where cages or wells are installed.
8. Landing required. The ladder shall be provided with a clear and unobstructed bottom landing area having a minimum dimension of 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) centered in front of the ladder.
9. Ladders shall be protected against corrosion by *approved* means.
10. Access to ladders shall be provided at all times. This requirement does not preclude the owner from securing the ladder from unauthorized access.

Catwalks installed to provide the required access shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall have railings as required for service platforms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to Group R-3 *occupancies*.

306.5.1 Sloped roofs. Where *appliances*, *equipment*, fans or other components that require ~~service~~ periodic maintenance are installed on a roof having a slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a level platform shall be provided on each side of the *appliance* or *equipment* to which access is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*. Access shall not require walking on roofs having a slope greater than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). Where access involves obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height, such obstructions shall be provided with ladders installed in accordance with Section 306.5 or stairways installed in accordance with the requirements specified in the *International Building Code* in the path of travel to and from *appliances*, fans or *equipment* requiring service.

306.5.2 Electrical requirements. ~~**Receptacle.**~~ A receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment or appliance* location in accordance with ~~NFPA 70~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle.~~

307.1 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid *combustion* by-products of condensing *appliances* shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Condensate piping

shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall not be smaller than the drain connection on the *appliance*. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

~~**307.1.1 Identification.** The termination of concealed condensate piping shall be marked to indicate whether the piping is connected to the primary or secondary drain.~~

307.2 Evaporators, condensing furnaces and cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be provided for *equipment* and *appliances* containing evaporators, ~~or~~ cooling coils or condensing furnaces. Condensate drain systems shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 307.2.1 through 307.2.5.

Exception: Evaporators and cooling coils that are designed to operate in sensible cooling only and not support condensation shall not be required to meet the requirements of this section.

307.2.1 Condensate disposal. Condensate from all condensing furnaces, cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Where pumps are used, they shall be installed with a factory-equipped auxiliary high-level switch and shall shut off equipment served upon activation of the auxiliary high-level switch. ~~Where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the pump, the pump shall also be located in the auxiliary drain pan or in a separate drain pan equipped with a separate drain line or water level detection device.~~ Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas so as to cause a nuisance.

307.2.1.1 Condensate discharge. Condensate drains shall not directly connect to any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe. Condensate drains shall not discharge into a plumbing fixture other than a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink or laundry sink. Condensate drain connections to a lavatory wye branch tailpiece or to a bathtub overflow pipe ~~shall not be considered as discharging to a plumbing fixture~~are prohibited. Except where discharging to grade outdoors, the point of discharge of condensate drains shall be located within the same occupancy, tenant space or *dwelling unit* as the source of the condensate.

307.2.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be ABS, cast iron, copper and copper alloy, CPVC, cross-linked polyethylene, galvanized steel, PE-RT, polyethylene, polypropylene, PVC or PVDF pipe or tubing. Components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 of the *International Plumbing Code* relative to the material type. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch pipe size and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with ~~Table 307.2.2~~an *approved* method. ~~Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of primary condensate drain piping if condensate dripping off the pipe could cause damage to any building component.~~ *Condensate piping* shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-3.

TABLE 307.2.2
CONDENSATE DRAIN SIZING

Deleted.

~~EQUIPMENT CAPACITY~~	~~MINIMUM CONDENSATE PIPE DIAMETER~~
~~Up to 20 tons of refrigeration~~	~~$^3/_4$ inch~~
~~Over 20 tons to 40 tons of refrigeration~~	~~1 inch~~
~~Over 40 tons to 90 tons of refrigeration~~	~~1 $^1/_4$ inch~~
~~Over 90 tons to 125 tons of refrigeration~~	~~1 $^1/_2$ inch~~
~~Over 125 tons to 250 tons of refrigeration~~	~~2 inch~~

~~For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ton = 3.517 kW.~~

307.2.3 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 307.2.1, where damage to any building components could occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* primary condensate removal system, one of the following auxiliary protection methods shall be provided for each cooling coil or fuel-fired *appliance* that produces condensate:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be provided under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit, or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).

   ~~a. *Appliances* with primary condensate pans above *appliance* components. Cooling coils mounted above the air handler or furnace shall have a secondary drain piped to auxiliary pan under air handler to avoid condensate migrating through *appliance* components before reaching the auxiliary drain pan.~~

   To prevent condensate migrating through the *appliance*, whenever cooling coils are located above the auxiliary drain pan, a secondary drain shall be piped from the overflow drain of the *equipment*-supplied drain pan to the auxiliary drain pan.

2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan provided with the *equipment*. Such overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.

3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be provided under the coils on which condensate will occur. Such pan shall be equipped with a water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.

4. A water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be provided that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line upstream of the primary drain line trap, the overflow drain line, or in the equipment-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

Exception: Fuel-fired *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

307.2.3.2 Appliance, equipment and insulation in pans. Where *appliances*, *equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, that portion of the *appliance*, *equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

~~**307.2.3.3 Identification.** The termination of concealed condensate piping shall be marked to indicate whether the piping is connected to the primary or secondary drain.~~

307.2.4.1 Ductless mini-split system traps. Ductless mini-split *equipment* that produces condensate shall be provided with an inline check valve located in the drain line, or a trap.

307.3 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the *appliance* or *equipment* served such that when the pump fails, the *appliance* or *equipment* will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

308.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required *clearances* to combustible materials and combustible assemblies for *chimneys,* vents, kitchen exhaust *equipment*, mechanical *appliances*, and mechanical devices and *equipment*.

308.2 Listed appliances and equipment. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled appliances* and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such *clearances* shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing.

308.3 Protective assembly construction and installation. Reduced *clearance* protective assemblies, including structural and support elements, shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Spacers utilized to maintain an airspace between the protective assembly and the protected material or assembly shall be noncombustible. Where a space between the protective assembly and protected combustible material or assembly is specified, the same space shall be provided around the edges of the protective assembly and the spacers shall be placed so as to allow air circulation by convection in such space. Protective assemblies shall not be placed less than 1 inch (25 mm) from the mechanical *appliances*, devices or *equipment*, regardless of the allowable reduced *clearance*.

308.4.1 Labeled assemblies. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on an approved reduced *clearance* protective assembly that ~~is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1618.~~ has been tested and bears the *label* of an *approved agency*.

308.4.2.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearance* required for solid fuel-burning *appliances* that are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. Where *appliances* are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the *clearance* reduction methods of Table 308.4.2 shall not reduce the *clearance* to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

308.4.2.4 Masonry fireplaces. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry fireplaces as specified in Chapter 8 and the *International Building Code*.

[BG] 309.1 Space-heating systems. Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space-heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above floor on the design heating day. The installation of portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose is not associated with human comfort.
2. Group F, H, S and U *occupancies*.

312.1 Load calculations. Heating and cooling system design loads for the purpose of sizing systems, *appliances* and *equipment* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183. Alternatively, design loads shall be determined by an *approved* equivalent computation procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3 [CE] of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

~~For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J, or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies.~~

For permitting, inspections, certificate of compliance or certificate of occupancy, verification of ~~Calculations for HVAC Systems – ACCA Manual D, ACCA Manual J nor ACCA Manual S~~ load and sizing calculation submittals and reviews shall not be required.

~~(Commentary reference 21 NCAC 50 .0505 GENERAL SUPERVISION AND STANDARD OF COMPETENCE)~~

SECTION 313
CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

313.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one and two family *dwellings* and townhouses within which fuel fired *appliances* or *fireplaces* are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an *approved carbon monoxide alarm* installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

313.2 Where required existing *dwellings*. In existing *dwellings*, where interior *alterations*, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel fired *appliances* or fireplaces are added or replaced, *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be provided in accordance with Section 313.1.

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of *dwellings*, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel fire *appliance* that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the *dwelling*, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

313.3 Alarm requirements. The required *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug in, or hard wired alarms are acceptable for use.

313.4 Carbon monoxide detection.

313.4.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.6.

313.4.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2, I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 313.4.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 313.4.1.2 through 313.4.1.6 exist.

313.4.1.2 Fuel burning appliances and fuel burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

313.4.1.3 Forced air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an approved location.

313.4.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms if there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:
    2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
    2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

313.4.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached *private garages*.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the *private garage* and the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one *story* above or below a *private garage*.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the *private garage* connects to the building through an *open-ended corridor*.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a *private garage* and *dwelling units, sleeping units* or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms.

313.4.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 313.4.1.5, an *open parking garage* complying with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code* or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the *International Building Code* shall not be considered a *private garage*.

313.4.2 Locations. Where required by Section 313.4.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 313.4.2.1 through 313.4.2.3.

313.4.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

313.4.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

313.4.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 or less.

313.4.3 Detection equipment. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 313.4.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 313.4.5.

313.4.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall comply with Sections 313.4.4.1 through 313.4.4.3.

313.4.4.1 Power source. *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exceptions:

1. Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be an acceptable alternative.

2. In A-2 occupancies the *carbon monoxide detector* shall be permitted to be battery-powered.

313.4.4.2 Listings. *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

313.4.4.3 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide alarms*. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

313.4.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide alarms* and shall comply with Sections 313.4.5.1 through 313.4.5.3.

313.4.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. *Carbon monoxide detectors* shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075.

~~**313.4.5.2 Locations.** *Carbon monoxide detectors* shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 313.4.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.~~

~~**313.4.5.3 Combination detectors.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide detectors*, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.~~

~~**313.4.6 Maintenance.** *Carbon monoxide alarms* and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. *Carbon monoxide alarms* and *carbon monoxide detectors* that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.~~

313.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 313.1.1 through 313.6. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with NCGS 143-138(b2) and applicable sections of the *International Existing Building Code*.

313.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2, I, and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 313.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 313.1.2 through 313.1.6 exist.

313.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

313.1.3 Fuel-burning forced-air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

313.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in one of the following locations:
    2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
    2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

313.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the private garage and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.
3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an *open-ended corridor*.
4. Where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms.

313.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 313.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code* or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the *International Building Code* shall not be considered a private garage.

313.2 Locations. Where required by Section 313.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 313.2.1 through 313.2.3.

313.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

313.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced-air furnace.
2. In Group I-3, carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit*.

313.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 or less.

313.3 Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 313.1 through 313.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 313.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 313.5.

313.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.4.

313.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exceptions:

1. Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.
2. In A-2 occupancies the carbon monoxide detector shall be permitted to be battery-powered.

313.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2034.

313.4.3 Locations. Carbon monoxide alarms shall only be installed in *dwelling units* and in *sleeping units*. They shall not be installed in locations where the code requires carbon monoxide detectors to be used.

313.4.4 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 217 and UL 2034.

313.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 313.5.1 through 313.5.3.

313.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075.

313.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 313.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

313.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided that they are *listed* in accordance with UL 268 and UL 2075.

313.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

313.6.1 Enclosed parking garages. Carbon monoxide and nitrogen dioxide detectors installed in enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 404.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing. Detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:** Chapter 4 intends to provide an indoor atmosphere that protects the health and well-being of building occupants. Both mechanical and natural ventilation are addressed. Mechanical ventilation provides what is considered to be acceptable indoor air quality. Mechanical ventilation minimizes adverse health effects and provides an atmosphere that generally is not objectionable to occupants.~~

401.2 Ventilation required. Every occupied space shall be ventilated by natural means in accordance with Section 402 or by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. *Dwelling units* complying with the air leakage requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* ~~or ASHRAE 90.1~~ shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. Ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407.

401.4 Intake opening location. Air intake openings shall comply with all of the following:

1. Intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from lot lines or buildings on the same lot.
2. Mechanical and gravity outdoor air intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from any hazardous or noxious contaminant source, such as vents, streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks, except as specified in Item 3 or Section 501.3.1. Outdoor air intake openings shall be permitted to be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks provided that the openings are located not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) vertically above such locations. Where openings front on a street or public way, the distance shall be measured from the closest edge of the street or public way.
3. Intake openings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) below contaminant sources where such sources are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the opening. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where an approved factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Intake openings on structures in flood hazard areas shall be at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.

401.5 Intake opening protection. Air intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in louvers, grilles and screens shall be sized in accordance with Table 401.5, and shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA 550. Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

TABLE 401.5
OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS PROTECTING AIR INTAKE OPENINGS

OUTDOOR OPENING TYPE	MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS[a]
Intake openings in residential occupancies	Not < 1/4 inch and not > 1/2 inch
Intake openings in other than residential occupancies	> 1/4 inch and not > 1 inch

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For rectangular openings, the table requirements apply to the shortest side. For round openings, the table requirements apply to the diameter. For square openings, the table requirements apply to any side.

~~**401.5.1** Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA 550.~~

~~Exception: One and two-family dwellings~~

~~**401.5.2** Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.~~

401.6 Contaminant sources. Stationary local sources producing airborne particulates, heat, odors, fumes, spray, vapors, smoke or gases in such quantities as to be irritating or injurious to health shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Chapter 5 or a means of collection and removal of the contaminants. Such exhaust shall discharge directly to an *approved* location at the exterior of the building.

[BG] 402.4 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required *natural ventilation*, the outdoor horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

403.1 Ventilation system. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided by a method of supply air and return or *exhaust air* except that mechanical ventilation air requirements for Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 *occupancies* shall be provided by an exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof. The amount of supply air shall be approximately equal to the amount of return and *exhaust air*. The system shall not be prohibited from producing negative or positive pressure. The system to convey *ventilation air* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

403.2.1 Recirculation of air. The outdoor air required by Section 403.3 shall not be recirculated. Air in excess of that required by Section 403.3 shall not be prohibited from being recirculated as a component of supply air to building spaces, except that:

1. Ventilation air shall not be recirculated from one *dwelling* to another or to dissimilar *occupancies*.
2. Supply air to a swimming pool and associated deck areas shall not be recirculated unless such air is dehumidified to maintain the relative humidity of the area at 60 percent or less. Air from this area shall not be recirculated to other spaces where more than 10 percent ~~or more~~ of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. The design and installation of dehumidification systems shall comply with ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS or other approved methodologies.
3. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note b in Table 403.3.1.1, recirculation of air from such spaces shall be prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited. Where recirculation of air is prohibited, all air supplied to such spaces shall be exhausted, including any air in excess of that required by Table 403.3.1.1.
4. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note g in Table 403.3.1.1, mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces is prohibited where more than 10 percent ~~or more~~ of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited.

403.3 Outdoor air and local exhaust airflow rates. Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies three stories and less in height above grade plane shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.2. Other buildings intended to be occupied shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

403.3.1 Other buildings intended to be occupied. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air for *occupancies* other than Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 three stories and less above grade plane shall comply with Sections 403.3.1.1 through 403.3.1.4.

TABLE 403.3.1.1
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT² [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT² [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT² [a]

Correctional facilities				
Booking/waiting	50	7.5	0.06	—
Cells				
without plumbing fixtures	25	5	0.12	—
with plumbing fixtures[g]	25	5	0.12	1.0
Day room	30	5	0.06	—
Dining halls (see "Food and beverage service")	—	—	—	—
Guard stations	15	5	0.06	—
Dry cleaners, laundries				
Coin-operated dry cleaner	20	15	—	—
Coin-operated laundries	20	7.5	0.12	—
Commercial dry cleaner	30	30	—	—
Commercial laundry	10	5	0.12	—
Storage, pick up	30	7.5	0.12	—
Education				
Art classroom[g]	20	10	0.18	0.7
Auditoriums				
Classrooms (ages 5–8)	150	5	0.06	—
Classrooms (age 9 plus)	25	~~10~~7.5	~~0.12~~ —	—
Computer lab	35	~~10~~7.5	~~0.12~~ —	—
Corridors (see "Public spaces")	25	10	0.12	—
Day care (through age 4)	—	—	—	—
Lecture classroom	25	10	0.18	—
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	65	7.5	0.06	—
Locker/dressing rooms[g]	150	7.5	0.06	—
Media center	—	—	—	0.25
Multiuse assembly	25	10	0.12	—
Music/theater/dance	100	7.5	0.06	—
Science laboratories[gi]	35	10	0.06	—
Smoking lounges[b]	25	10	0.18	~~1.0~~ —
Sports locker rooms[g]	70	60	—	—
Wood/metal shops[g]	—	—	—	0.5
	20	10	0.18	0.5

Food and beverage service				
Bars, cocktail lounges	100	7.5	0.18	—
Cafeteria, fast food	100	7.5	0.18	—
Dining rooms	70	7.5	0.18	—
Kitchens (cooking)[b]	20	7.5	0.12	0.7

(continued)

TABLE 403.3.1.1—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT² [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIR-FLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT² [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT² [a]
Hotels, motels, resorts and dormitories				
Bathrooms/toilet—private[g]	—	—	—	25/50[f]
Bedroom/living room	10	5	0.06	—
Conference/meeting	50	5	0.06	—
Dormitory sleeping areas	20	5	0.06	—
Gambling casinos	120	7.5	0.18	—
Lobbies/prefunction	30	7.5	0.06	—
Multipurpose assembly	120	5	0.06	—

Offices				
Conference rooms	50	5	0.06	—
Main entry lobbies	10	5	0.06	—
Office spaces	5	5	0.06	—
Reception areas	30	5	0.06	—
Telephone/data entry	60	5	0.06	—
Private dwellings, single and multiple				
Garages, common for multiple units[b]	—	—	—	0.75
Garages, below dwelling units[j]	—	—	—	100 cfm per car
Kitchens[b]	—	—	—	50/100[f]
Living areas[c]	Based on number of bedrooms. First bedroom, 2; each additional bedroom, 1	0.35 ACH but not less than 15 cfm/person	—	—
Toilet rooms and bathrooms[g]	—	—	—	25/50[f]
Public spaces				
Corridors	—	—	0.06	—
Courtrooms	70	5	0.06	—
Elevator car	—	—	—	1.0
Legislative chambers	50	5	0.06	—
Libraries	10	5	0.12	—
Museums (children's)	40	7.5	0.12	—
Museums/galleries	40	7.5	0.06	—
Places of religious worship	120	5	0.06	—
Shower room (per shower head)[g]	—	—	—	50/20[f]
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Toilet rooms — public[g]	—	—	—	50/70[e]

Retail stores, sales floors and showroom floors				
Dressing rooms	—	—	—	0.25
Mall common areas	40	7.5	0.06	—
Sales	15	7.5	0.12	—
Shipping and receiving	2	10	0.12	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Storage rooms	—	—	0.12	—
Warehouses (see "Storage")	—	10	0.06	—

(continued)

TABLE 403.3.1.1—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT² [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT² [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT² [a]
Specialty shops				
Automotive motor fuel-dispensing stations[b]	—	—	—	1.5
Barber	25	7.5	0.06	0.5
Beauty salons[b]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Embalming room[b]	—	—	—	2.0
Nail salons [b, h]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Pet shops (animal areas)[b]	10	7.5	0.18	0.9
Supermarkets	8	7.5	0.06	—

Sports and amusement				
Bowling alleys (seating areas)	40	10	0.12	—
Disco/dance floors	100	20	0.06	—
Game arcades	20	7.5	0.18	—
Gym, stadium, arena (play area)	7	20	0.18	—
Health club/aerobics room	40	20	0.06	—
Health club/weight room	10	20	0.06	—
Ice arenas without combustion engines	—	—	0.30	0.5
Spectator areas	150	7.5	0.06	—
Swimming pools (pool and deck area)	—	—	0.48	—
Storage				
Refrigerated warehouses/freezers	—	10	—	—
Repair garages, enclosed parking garages[b, d]	—	—	—	0.75
Warehouses	—	10	0.06	—
Theaters				
Auditoriums (see “Education”)	—	—	—	—
Lobbies	150	5	0.06	—
Stages, studios	70	10	0.06	—
Ticket booths	60	5	0.06	—
Transportation				
Platforms	100	7.5	0.06	—
Transportation waiting	100	7.5	0.06	—

Workrooms				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	5	5	0.06	—
Computer (without printing)	4	5	0.06	—
Copy, printing rooms	4	5	0.06	0.5
Darkrooms	—	—	—	1.0
Meat processing[c]	10	15	—	—
Pharmacy (prep. area)	10	5	0.18	—
Photo studios	10	5	0.12	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s, 1 ton = 908 kg, 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot = 0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Based on net occupiable floor area.

b. Mechanical exhaust required and the recirculation of air from such spaces to other spaces is prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Item 3).

c. Spaces unheated or maintained below 50°F are not covered by these requirements unless the occupancy is continuous.

d. Ventilation systems in enclosed parking garages shall comply with Section 404.

e. Rates are per water closet or urinal. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

f. Rates are per room unless otherwise indicated. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

g. Mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces to other spaces is prohibited. For occupancies other than science laboratories, where there is a wheel-type energy recovery ventilation (ERV) unit in the exhaust system design, the volume of air leaked from the exhaust airstream into the outdoor airstream within the ERV shall be less than 10 percent of the outdoor air volume. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Items 2 and 4).

h. For nail salons, each manicure and pedicure station shall be provided with a source capture system capable of exhausting not less than 50 cfm per station. Exhaust inlets shall be located in accordance with Section 502.20. Where one or more required source capture systems operate continuously during occupancy, the exhaust rate from such systems shall be permitted to be applied to the exhaust flow rate required by Table 403.3.1.1 for the nail salon.

i. Commentary: Refer to design guidelines, North Carolina Department of Public Instruction School Planning, Z9.5 American National Standard for Laboratory Ventilation.

j. If the tenants of the dwelling have exclusive use of the garage below, no exhaust is required.

403.3.1.1.1 Zone outdoor airflow. The minimum outdoor airflow required to be supplied to each zone shall be determined as a function of *occupancy* classification and space air distribution effectiveness in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.1.1 through 403.3.1.1.1.3.

TABLE 403.3.1.1.1.2
ZONE AIR DISTRIBUTION EFFECTIVENESS[a, b, c, d]

AIR DISTRIBUTION CONFIGURATION	E_z
Ceiling or floor supply of cool air	1.0[e]
Ceiling or floor supply of warm air and floor return	1.0
Ceiling supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.8[f]
Floor supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.7
Makeup air drawn in on the opposite side of the room from the exhaust or return	0.8

Makeup air drawn in near to the exhaust or return location	0.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 foot per minute = 0.00506 m/s,
°C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. "Cool air" is air cooler than space temperature.
b. "Warm air" is air warmer than space temperature.
c. "Ceiling" includes any point above the breathing zone.
d. "Floor" includes any point below the breathing zone.
e. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.2 shall be permitted for systems with a floor supply of cool air and ceiling return, provided that low-velocity displacement ventilation achieves unidirectional flow and thermal stratification.
f. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.0 shall be permitted for systems with a ceiling supply of warm air, provided that supply air temperature is less than 15°F above space temperature and provided that the 150-foot-per-minute supply air jet reaches to within $4^1/_2$ feet of floor level.

403.3.1.1.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. The zone outdoor airflow rate (V_{oz}), shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-2.

$$V_{oz} = \frac{V_{bz}}{E_z}$$

(Equation 4-2)

Exception: K–12 schools shall be exempt from use of this effectiveness factor ($V_{oz} = V_{bz}$).

403.3.1.1.2 System outdoor airflow. The outdoor air required to be supplied by each ventilation system shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.1 through 403.3.1.1.2.3.4 as a function of system type and zone outdoor airflow rates.

403.3.1.1.2.3 Multiple zone recirculating systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to more than one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.3.1 through 403.3.1.1.2.3.4.

Exception: Use of ASHRAE 62.1-2019 Simplified Procedure Section 6.2.4.3 for multiple zone recirculating systems for Sections 403.3.1.1.2.3.1 and 403.3.1.1.2.3.2.

403.3.1.1.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. The outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

$$V_{ot} = \frac{V_{ou}}{E_v}$$

(Equation 4-8)

Exception: K–12 schools shall be exempt from use of this effectiveness factor ($V_{ot} = V_{ou}$).

403.3.1.3 System operation. The minimum flow rate of outdoor air that the ventilation system must be capable of supplying during its operation shall be permitted to be based on the rate per person indicated in Table 403.3.1.1 and the actual number of occupants present. Where demand-controlled ventilation is employed to adjust the outdoor airflow rate based on the actual number of occupants present, the minimum quantity of outdoor air shall not fall below that determined from the area outdoor airflow rate column of Table 403.3.1.1 during periods when the building is expected to be occupied.

403.3.2 Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies, three stories and less. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air in Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 *occupancies* three stories and less in height above grade plane shall comply with Sections 403.3.2.1 through 403.3.2.5.

403.3.2.1 Outdoor air for dwelling units. An outdoor air ventilation system consisting of a mechanical exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof shall be installed for each *dwelling unit*. Local exhaust or supply systems, including outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler, are permitted to serve as such a system. The outdoor air ventilation system shall be designed to provide the required rate of outdoor air continuously during the period that the building is occupied. The minimum continuous outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-9.

$$Q_{OA} = 0.01A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1)$$ **(Equation 4-9)**

where:

Q_{OA} = outdoor airflow rate, cfm

A_{floor} = floor area, ft^2

N_{br} = number of bedrooms; not to be less than one

Exceptions:

1. The outdoor air ventilation system is not required to operate continuously where the system has controls that enable operation for not less than 1 hour of each 4-hour period. The average outdoor airflow rate over the 4-hour period shall be not less than that prescribed by Equation 4-9.
2. The minimum mechanical ventilation rate determined in accordance with Equation 4-9 shall be reduced by 30 percent provided that both of the following conditions apply:
   - 2.1. A ducted system supplies ventilation air directly to each bedroom and to one or more of the following rooms:
     - 2.1.1. Living room.
     - 2.1.2. Dining room.
     - 2.1.3. Kitchen.
   - 2.2. The whole-house ventilation system is a *balanced ventilation* system.

403.3.2.4 System controls. Where provided within a *dwelling unit*, controls for outdoor air ventilation systems shall include text or a symbol indicating the system's function.

403.3.2.5 Ventilating equipment. Fans providing exhaust or outdoor air shall be *listed* and *labeled* to provide the minimum required air flow in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51.

404.1 Enclosed parking garages. Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages shall operate continuously or shall be automatically operated by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. Such detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075 and installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Automatic operation shall cycle the ventilation system between the following two modes of operation:

1. Full-on at an airflow rate of not less than 0.75 cfm per square foot [0.0038 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of the floor area served.
2. Standby at an airflow rate of not less than 0.05 cfm per square foot [0.00025 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of the floor area served.

404.2 Occupied spaces accessory to public garages. Connecting offices, waiting rooms, ticket booths and similar uses that are accessory to a public garage shall be maintained at a positive pressure and shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

405.2 Fan shutdown controls. In Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, each air distribution system shall be equipped with a manual emergency control to stop supply and return air in an emergency. The control device shall be mounted in a readily accessible location and be identified.

Exception: Air-handling equipment serving a single space.

406.1 General. Uninhabited spaces, such as crawl spaces and attics, shall be provided with *natural ventilation* openings as required by the *International Building Code* or shall be provided with a mechanical exhaust and supply air system. The mechani-

cal exhaust rate shall be not less than 0.02 cfm per square foot (0.00001 $m^3/s \cdot m^2$) of horizontal area and shall be automatically controlled to operate when the relative humidity in the space served exceeds 60 percent.

~~**Exception:** As otherwise permitted in the *North Carolina Building Code*.~~

407.1 General. Mechanical ventilation for ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code, ASHRAE 170 and NFPA 99.

SECTION 408
INDOOR FIRING RANGES

408.1 Indoor firing ranges. See Section 502.19.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 5 addresses exhaust systems for, among others, kitchens, laboratories, processes, garages, hazardous systems, clothes dryers and smoke control systems. Many provisions are linked to the* International Fire Code®. *Exhaust systems mitigate health and fire hazards by removing and diluting contaminants in buildings. Exhaust system discharge location is also addressed as an important concern.*~~

501.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction and installation of mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking *appliances*; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502.

501.2 Independent system required. Single or combined mechanical exhaust systems for environmental air shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Dryer, domestic kitchen and hazardous exhaust shall be independent of all other systems. Type I exhaust systems shall be independent of all other exhaust systems except as provided in Section 506.3.5. Single or combined Type II exhaust systems for food-processing operations shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 506 through 509.

501.3 Exhaust discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged outdoors at a point where it will not cause a public nuisance and not less than the distances specified in Section 501.3.1. The air shall be discharged to a location from which it cannot again be readily drawn in by a ventilating system. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic or crawl space, or be directed onto walkways~~, balconies, decks, breezeways, covered walkways and similar horizontal projections~~.

Exceptions:

1. Whole-house ventilation-type attic fans shall be permitted to discharge into the attic space of *dwelling units* having private attics.
2. Commercial cooking recirculating systems.
3. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or *natural ventilation* is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* domestic ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

501.3.1 Location of exhaust outlets. The termination point of exhaust outlets and ducts discharging to the outdoors shall be located with the following minimum distances:

1. For ducts conveying explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts: 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lines; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 6 feet (1829 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 30 feet (9144 mm) from combustible walls and operable openings into buildings that are in the direction of the exhaust discharge; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
2. For other product-conveying outlets: 10 feet (3048 mm) from the property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
3. For all *environmental air* exhaust: 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from operable openings into buildings for all *occupancies* other than Group U; and 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intakes. Such exhaust shall not be considered hazardous or noxious. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where an approved factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Exhaust outlets serving structures in flood hazard areas shall be installed at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.
5. For specific systems, see the following sections:
    5.1. Clothes dryer exhaust, Section 504.4.
    5.2. Kitchen hoods and other kitchen exhaust *equipment*, Sections 506.3.13, 506.4 and 506.5.
    5.3. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems, Section 511.2.
    5.4. Subslab soil exhaust systems, Section 512.4.

5.5. Smoke control systems, Section 513.10.3.

5.6. Refrigerant discharge, Section 1105.7.

5.7. *Machinery room* discharge, Section 1105.6.1.

501.3.2 Exhaust opening protection. Exhaust openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in screens, louvers and grilles shall be sized not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) and not larger than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect exhaust openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA Standard 550.

~~**Exception:** One- and two-family dwellings.~~

Outdoor openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

501.4 Pressure equalization. Mechanical exhaust systems shall be sized to remove the quantity of air required by this chapter to be exhausted. The system shall operate when air is required to be exhausted. Where mechanical exhaust is required in a room or space in other than *occupancies* in Group R-3 and *dwelling units* in Group R-2, such space shall be maintained with a neutral or negative pressure. If a greater quantity of air is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system than is removed by a mechanical exhaust for a room, adequate means shall be provided for the natural or mechanical exhaust of the excess air supplied. If only a mechanical exhaust system is installed for a room or if a greater quantity of air is removed by a mechanical exhaust system than is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system for a room, adequate *makeup air* shall be provided to satisfy the deficiency.

~~**Exception:** Domestic exhaust systems in residential occupancies and similar uses (domestic clothes dryer, domestic range hood, domestic bathroom exhaust).~~

502.1 General. An exhaust system shall be provided, maintained and operated as specifically required by this section and for all occupied areas where machines, vats, tanks, furnaces, forges, salamanders and other *appliances, equipment* and processes in such areas produce or throw off dust or particles sufficiently light to float in the air, or emit heat, odors, fumes, spray, gas or smoke in such quantities so as to be irritating or injurious to health or safety.

[F] 502.4 Stationary storage battery systems. Stationary storage battery systems shall be regulated and ventilated in accordance with Section 1207.6.1 of the *International Fire Code* and the general requirements of this chapter.

[F] 502.5 Ventilation of battery systems in cabinets. Stationary storage battery systems installed in cabinets shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 502.4.

[F] 502.6.2 Type IV and V systems. Type IV and V dry cleaning systems shall be provided with an automatically activated exhaust ventilation system to maintain an air velocity of not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) through the loading door when the door is opened.

Exception: Dry cleaning units are not required to be provided with exhaust ventilation where an exhaust hood is installed immediately outside of and above the loading door and operates at an airflow rate as follows:

[F] 502.7.7 Floor resurfacing operations. To prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors during floor resurfacing operations, mechanical ventilation at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of area being finished shall be provided. Such exhaust shall be by *approved* temporary or portable means. Vapors shall be exhausted to the outdoors.

[F] 502.9.1 Compressed gases—medical gas systems. Rooms for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code*, and that do not have an exterior wall, shall be exhausted through a duct to the exterior of the building. Both separate airstreams shall be enclosed in a 1-hour-rated shaft enclosure from the room to the exterior. *Approved* mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of the area of the room.

Gas cabinets for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the ~~permit amounts~~maximum allowable quantity per control area for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code* shall be connected to an exhaust system. The

average velocity of ventilation at the face of access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.

[F] 502.9.5 Flammable and combustible liquids. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided as required by Sections 502.9.5.1 through 502.9.5.5 for the storage, use, dispensing, mixing and handling of flammable and combustible liquids. Unless otherwise specified, this section shall apply to any quantity of flammable and combustible liquids.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to flammable and combustible liquids that are exempt from the *International Fire Code*.
2. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wine in barrels and casks conforming to the requirements of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.5.1 Vaults. Vaults that contain tanks of Class I liquids shall be provided with continuous ventilation at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 of floor area [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)], but not less than 150 cfm (4.25 m^3/min). Failure of the exhaust airflow shall automatically shut down the dispensing system. The exhaust system shall be designed to provide air movement across all parts of the vault floor. Supply and exhaust ducts shall extend to a point not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the floor. The exhaust system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 91. Means shall be provided to automatically detect any flammable vapors and to automatically shut down the dispensing system upon detection of such flammable vapors in the exhaust duct at a concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.

[F] 502.9.5.5 Bulk plants or terminals. Ventilation shall be provided for portions of properties where flammable and combustible liquids are received by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars or tank vehicles and are stored or blended in bulk for the purpose of distributing such liquids by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars, tank vehicles or containers as required by Sections 502.9.5.5.1 through 502.9.5.5.3.

[F] 502.9.10.1 Portable container use. Above-grade underfloor spaces or basements in which portable LP-gas containers are used or are stored awaiting use or resale shall be provided with an *approved* means of ventilation.

Exception: Department of Transportation (DOT) specification cylinders with a maximum water capacity of 2.7 pounds (1.2 kg) for use in completely self-contained hand torches and similar applications. The quantity of LP-gas shall not exceed 20 pounds (9 kg).

502.14 Motor vehicle operation. In areas where motor vehicles operate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 403. Additionally, areas in which stationary motor vehicles are operated shall be provided with a *source capture system* that connects directly to the motor vehicle exhaust systems. Such system shall be engineered by a registered design professional or shall be factory-built *equipment* designed and sized for the purpose.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply where the motor vehicles being operated or repaired are electrically powered.
2. This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.
3. This section shall not apply to motor vehicle service areas where engines are operated inside the building only for the duration necessary to move the motor vehicles in and out of the building.

[F] 502.16 Repair garages for vehicles fueled by lighter-than-air fuels. Repair garages used for the conversion and repair of vehicles that use compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air motor fuels shall be provided with an *approved* mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with Section 502.16.1 or 502.16.2 as applicable.

Exceptions:

1. Repair garages where work is not performed on the fuel system and is limited to exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air-fueled motor vehicle.
2. Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles where work is not performed on the hydrogen storage tank and is limited to the exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the hydrogen-fueled vehicle.

During the work, the entire hydrogen fuel system shall contain a quantity of hydrogen that is less than 200 cubic feet (5.6 m^3).

[F] 502.16.1 Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles. Repair garages used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall be provided with an approved exhaust ventilation system in accordance with this code and Chapter 6 of NFPA 2.

[F] 502.16.2 Exhaust ventilation system. Repair garages used for the repair of compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas or other lighter-than-air motor fuel, other than hydrogen, shall be provided with an approved mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with this code and Sections 502.16.2.1 and 502.16.2.2.

Exception: Where approved, natural ventilation shall be an alternative to mechanical exhaust ventilation.

[F] 502.16.2.1 Design. For indoor locations, air supply inlets and exhaust outlets for mechanical ventilation shall be arranged to provide uniformly distributed air movement with inlets uniformly arranged on walls near floor level and outlets located at the high point of the room in walls or the roof.

Failure of the exhaust ventilation system shall cause the fueling system to shut down.

The exhaust ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cubic foot per minute (0.03 m^3/min) per 12 cubic feet (0.34 m^3) of room volume.

[F] 502.16.2.2 Operation. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall operate continuously.

Exceptions:

1. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems that are interlocked with a gas detection system designed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.
2. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems in garages that are used only for the repair of vehicles fueled by liquid fuels or odorized gases, such as compressed natural gas, where the exhaust ventilation system is electrically interlocked with the lighting circuit.

502.20.1 Operation. The exhaust system for manicure and pedicure stations shall have controls that operate the system continuously when the space is occupied.

503.1 General. Motors and fans shall be sized to provide the required air movement. Motors in areas that contain flammable vapors or dusts shall be of a type *approved* for such environments. A manually operated remote control installed at an *approved* location shall be provided to shut off fans or blowers in flammable vapor or dust systems. Electrical *equipment* and *appliances* used in operations that generate explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be interlocked with the ventilation system so that the *equipment* and *appliances* cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation. Motors for fans used to convey flammable vapors or dusts shall be located outside the duct or shall be protected with *approved* shields and dustproofing. Motors and fans shall be provided with a means of access for servicing and maintenance.

503.3 Equipment and appliance identification plate. *Equipment* and *appliances* used to exhaust explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall bear an identification plate stating the ventilation rate for which the system was designed.

504.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the building.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

504.4 Exhaust installation. Dryer exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct or weathercap termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the exhaust flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts

shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or *chimney*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or *plenums*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 603.9.

504.4.1 Termination location. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into buildings, including openings in ventilated soffits. The exhaust duct terminations shall not discharge onto walkways, balconies, decks, breezeways, covered walkways and similar horizontal projections. Exhaust ducts shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

Exception: Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross-sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm^2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.

504.4.2 Exhaust termination outlet and passageway size. The passageway of dryer exhaust duct terminals shall be undiminished in size and shall provide an open area of not less than 12.5 square inches (8065 mm^2).

504.5 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

504.6 Booster fans prohibited. Domestic booster fans shall not be installed in dryer exhaust systems.

504.7 Makeup air. ~~Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air*.~~ Where ~~a closet~~ an enclosed space is less than 70 square feet and is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) shall be provided in the ~~closet~~ enclosure or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

504.8 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, have a thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

504.9 Domestic clothes dryer ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections 504.9.1 through 504.9.6.

504.9.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal not less than ~~0.016~~0.0157 inch (0.4 mm) in thickness (28 ga galv. 26 ga Al). With the exception of the transition duct, flexible ducts are prohibited. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

504.9.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. ~~Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude more than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) into the inside of the duct.~~ Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct. Ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 603.9. Ducts shall be mechanically fastened by one of the following methods.

a. Nonmetallic mechanical fasteners (tie-straps) shall be listed to UL 181B.

b. Metal band duct clamps are not required to be listed.

Where dryer exhaust ducts are enclosed in wall or ceiling cavities, such cavities shall allow the installation of the duct without deformation.

504.9.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction, and must remain entirely within the room where the *appliance* is located.

504.9.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections 504.9.4.1 through 504.9.4.3.

504.9.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 504.9.4.1.

TABLE 504.9.4.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4″ radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4″ radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches
10″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

504.9.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 504.9.4.1 shall be used.

504.9.4.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator manufacturer's installation instructions.

504.9.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

1. Labels shall be permanently stenciled, laminated, or commercially available plastic or metal tags.
2. Labels shall state, at a minimum (fill in the blank):

   Caution: Equivalent length of _____ feet including _____ 45 deg. elbows and _____ 90 deg. elbows. Any installed dryer must be equipped with an exhaust system that meets or exceeds this equivalent length requirement.
3. Labels can be attached to wall or vent receptor.

504.9.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of structure.

~~**504.9.7 Duct termination.** Exhaust ducts shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.~~

~~**Exception:** Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.~~

504.10 Commercial clothes dryers. The installation of dryer exhaust ducts serving commercial clothes dryers shall comply with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Exhaust fan motors installed in exhaust systems shall be located outside of the airstream. In multiple installations, the fan shall operate continuously or be interlocked to operate when any individual unit is operating. Ducts shall have a minimum *clearance* of 6 inches (152 mm) to combustible materials. Clothes dryer transition ducts used to connect the *appliance* to the exhaust duct system shall be limited to single lengths not to exceed 8 feet

(2438 mm) in length and shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

504.11 Common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple clothes dryers, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. *Makeup air* shall be provided for the exhaust system.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleaning and inspection. The finished opening shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only clothes dryers and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

SECTION 505
DOMESTIC COOKING EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

505.1 General. Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section.

505.2 Domestic cooking exhaust. Where domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* is provided, it shall comply with the following as applicable:

1. The fan for overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* not integral with the cooking *appliance* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507.
2. Overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* with integral fans shall comply with UL 507.
3. Domestic cooking *appliances* with integral downdraft exhaust *equipment* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858 or ANSI Z21.1.
4. Microwave ovens with integral exhaust for installation over the cooking surface shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923.

505.3 Exhaust ducts. Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall discharge to the outdoors through sheet metal ducts constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper. Such ducts shall have smooth inner walls, shall be airtight and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Installations in Group I-1 and I-2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code* and Section 904.14 of the *International Fire Code*.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Groups I-1 and I-2, where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or natural ventilation is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

2. Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking *appliances* equipped with downdraft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of Schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:

    2.1. The duct shall be installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.

    2.2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed shall be completely backfilled with sand or gravel.

    2.3. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.

    2.4. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade outside of the building.

    2.5. The PVC ducts shall be solvent cemented.

505.4 Makeup air required Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cfm~~cubic feet per minute~~ (0.19 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air* at a rate approximately equal to the *exhaust air* rate ~~that is in excess of 400 cfmcubic feet per minute (0.19 m^3/s)~~. Such *makeup air* systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

~~**Exception:** Where all appliances in the house are direct-vent, power-vent, unvented, or electric, makeup air shall be provided where exhaust fans are capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s). Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s).~~

505.5 Common exhaust systems for domestic kitchens located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple domestic kitchen exhaust systems, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following~~, or other *approved* method~~:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct, except as specified in Section 505.3. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an approved location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. Where the exhaust rate for an individual kitchen exceeds 400 cfm (0.19 m^3/s) *makeup air* shall be provided in accordance with Section 505.4.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide access to the duct to allow for cleanout and inspection. The finished openings shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only kitchen exhaust and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

505.6 Other than Group R. In other than Group R *occupancies*, where domestic ~~cooking appliances are utilized for domestic purposes, such appliances shall be may be provided with domestic range hoods. Hoods and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections 505.1 and 505.2 if the makeup air required in Section 505.24 is not already provided via the buildings ventilation system. Also, see the exception to Section 507.1.2~~cooktops, ranges, and open-top broilers are used for domestic purposes, domestic cooking exhaust systems shall be provided.

506.3.1.2 Makeup air ducts. *Makeup air* ducts connecting to or within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 603.1, 603.3, 603.4, 603.9, 603.10 and 603.12. Duct insulation installed within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be noncombustible or shall be *listed* for the application.

506.3.2.1 Duct joint types. Duct joints shall be butt joints, welded flange joints with a maximum flange depth of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) or overlapping duct joints of either the telescoping or bell type. Overlapping joints shall be installed to prevent ledges and obstructions from collecting grease or interfering with gravity drainage to the intended collection point. The difference between the inside cross-sectional dimensions of overlapping sections of duct shall not exceed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). The length of overlap for overlapping duct joints shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm).

506.3.2.5 Grease duct test. Prior to the use or concealment of any portion of a grease duct system, a leakage test shall be performed in the presence of the *code official* or shall be witnessed by a professional engineer who shall provide certification of performance to the *code official*. Ducts shall be considered to be concealed where installed in shafts or covered by coatings or wraps that prevent the ductwork from being visually inspected on all sides. The permit holder shall be responsible to provide the necessary *equipment* and perform the grease duct leakage test. A light test shall be performed to determine that all welded and brazed joints are liquid tight.

A light test shall be performed by passing a lamp having a power rating of not less than 100 watts through the entire section of ductwork to be tested. The lamp shall be open so as to emit light equally in all directions perpendicular to the duct walls. A test shall be performed for the entire duct system, including the hood-to-duct connection. The duct work shall be permitted to be tested in sections, provided that every joint is tested. For *listed* factory-built grease ducts, this test shall be limited to duct joints assembled in the field and shall exclude factory welds.

506.3.5 Separation of grease duct system. A separate grease duct system shall be provided for each Type I hood. A separate grease duct system is not required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. All interconnected hoods are located within the same story.
2. All interconnected hoods are located within the same room or in adjoining rooms.
3. Interconnecting ducts do not penetrate assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated.
4. The grease duct system does not serve solid-fuel-fired *appliances*.

506.3.7 Prevention of grease accumulation in grease ducts. Duct systems serving a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed so that grease cannot collect in any portion thereof, and the system shall slope not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) toward the hood or toward a grease reservoir designed and installed in accordance with Section 506.3.7.1. Where horizontal ducts exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm) in length, the slope shall be not less than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3-percent slope).

Exception: Factory-built grease ducts shall be installed at a slope that is in accordance with the listing and manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.3.9 Grease duct horizontal cleanouts. Cleanouts serving horizontal sections of grease ducts shall:

1. Be spaced not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) apart.
2. Be located not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from changes in direction that are greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Be located on the bottom only where other locations are not available and shall be provided with internal damming of the opening such that grease will flow past the opening without pooling. Bottom cleanouts and openings shall be approved for the application and installed liquid tight.
4. Not be closer than 1 inch (25 mm) from the edges of the duct.
5. Have opening dimensions of not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Where such dimensions preclude installation, the opening shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) on one side and shall be large enough to provide access for cleaning and maintenance.
6. Be located at grease reservoirs.
7. Be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of horizontal discharge fans.

506.3.11 Grease duct enclosures. A commercial kitchen grease duct serving a Type I hood that penetrates a ceiling, wall, floor or any concealed space shall be enclosed from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal. In-line exhaust fans not

located outdoors shall be enclosed as required for grease ducts. A duct shall penetrate exterior walls only at locations where unprotected openings are permitted by the *International Building Code*. The duct enclosure shall serve a single grease duct and shall not contain other ducts, piping or wiring systems. Duct enclosures shall be a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 506.3.11.1, a field-applied enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.2 or a factory-built enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.3. Duct enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that of the assembly penetrated and not less than 1 hour. Fire dampers and smoke dampers shall not be installed in grease ducts.

Exception: A duct enclosure shall not be required for a grease duct or hood that penetrates only a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly.

506.3.11.2 Field-applied grease duct enclosure. Grease ducts constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.1 shall be enclosed by a *listed* and *labeled* field-applied grease duct enclosure material, systems, product, or method of construction specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with ASTM E2336. The surface of the duct shall be continuously covered on all sides from the point at which the duct originates to the outlet terminal. Duct penetrations shall be protected with a through-penetration firestop system tested and *listed* in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 and having a "F" and "T" rating equal to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. The grease duct enclosure and firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Partial application of a field-applied grease duct enclosure shall not be installed for the sole purpose of reducing *clearances* to combustibles at isolated sections of grease duct. Exposed duct-wrap systems shall be protected where subject to physical damage.

506.3.12 Grease duct fire-resistive access opening. Where cleanout openings are located in ducts within a fire-resistance-rated enclosure, access openings shall be provided in the enclosure at each cleanout point. Access openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting sliding or hinged doors that are equal in fire-resistive protection to that of the shaft or enclosure. An *approved* sign shall be placed on access opening panels with wording as follows: "ACCESS PANEL. DO NOT OBSTRUCT."

506.3.13.2 Termination through an exterior wall. Exhaust outlets shall be permitted to terminate through exterior walls where the smoke, grease, gases, vapors and odors in the discharge from such terminations do not create a public nuisance or a fire hazard. Such terminations shall not be located where protected openings are required by the *International Building Code*. Such terminations shall be located in accordance with Section 506.3.13.3 and shall not be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of any opening in the exterior wall.

506.4.1 Ducts. Ducts and *plenums* serving Type II hoods shall be constructed of rigid metallic materials. Duct construction, installation, bracing and supports shall comply with Chapter 6. Ducts subject to positive pressure and ducts conveying moisture-laden or waste-heat-laden air shall be constructed, joined and sealed in an *approved* manner.

506.5 Exhaust equipment. Exhaust *equipment*, including fans and grease reservoirs, shall comply with Sections 506.5.1 through 506.5.6 and shall be of an *approved* design or shall be *listed* for the application.

506.5.1.2 In-line fan location. Where enclosed duct systems are connected to in-line fans ~~not protected by fire-rated enclosures or field-applied grease duct enclosure, and~~ not located outdoors, ~~then~~ the fan shall be located in a room or space having the same fire-resistance rating as the duct enclosure. Access shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of fan components. Such rooms or spaces shall be ventilated in accordance with the fan manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.5.2 Pollution-control units. The installation of pollution-control units shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. Pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 8782.
2. Fans serving pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 762.
3. Bracing and supports for pollution-control units shall be of noncombustible material securely attached to the structure and designed to carry gravity and seismic loads within the stress limitations of the *International Building Code*.
4. Pollution-control units located indoors shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use. Where enclosed duct systems, as required by Section 506.3.11, are connected to a pollution control unit, such unit shall be *listed* and *labeled*, in accordance with UL 2221 or ASTM E2336, for location in an enclosure having the same fire-resistance rating as the duct enclosure. Access shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of the unit. The space or enclosure shall be ventilated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
5. *Clearances* shall be maintained between the pollution-control unit and combustible material in accordance with the listing.

6. Roof-mounted pollution-control units shall be listed for outdoor installation and shall be mounted not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof.
7. Exhaust outlets for pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.
8. An airflow differential pressure control shall be provided to monitor the pressure drop across the filter sections of a pollution-control unit. When the airflow is reduced below the design velocity, the airflow differential pressure control shall activate a visual alarm located in the area where cooking operations occur.
9. Pollution-control units shall be provided with a factory-installed fire suppression system.
10. Service space shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the pollution control unit and the requirements of Section 306.
11. Wash-down drains shall discharge through a grease interceptor and shall be sized for the flow. Drains shall be sealed with a trap or other approved means to prevent air bypass. Where a trap is utilized it shall have a seal depth that accounts for the system pressurization and evaporation between cleanings.
12. Protection from freezing shall be provided for the water supply and fire suppression systems where such systems are subject to freezing.
13. Duct connections to pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.2.3. Where water splash or carryover can occur in the transition duct as a result of a washing operation, the transition duct shall slope downward toward the cabinet drain pan for a length not less than 18 inches (457 mm). Ducts shall transition to the full size of the unit's inlet and outlet openings.
14. Extra-heavy-duty *appliance* exhaust systems shall not be connected to pollution-control units except where such units are specifically designed and listed for use with solid fuels.
15. Pollution-control units shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

506.5.3 Exhaust fan discharge. Exhaust fans shall be positioned so that the discharge will not impinge on the roof, other *equipment* or *appliances* or parts of the structure. A vertical discharge fan shall be manufactured with an *approved* drain outlet at the lowest point of the housing to permit drainage of grease to an *approved* grease reservoir.

506.5.4 Exhaust fan mounting.

Upblast fans serving Type I hoods and installed in a vertical or horizontal position shall be hinged, supplied with a flexible weatherproof electrical cable to permit inspection and cleaning and shall be equipped with a means of restraint to limit the swing of the fan on its hinge. The ductwork shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof surface.

506.5.5 Clearances. Exhaust *equipment* serving a Type I hood shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

Exception: Factory-built exhaust *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 304.1 and *listed* for a lesser *clearance*.

506.5.6 Termination location. The outlet of exhaust *equipment* serving Type I hoods shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.

Exception: The minimum horizontal distance between vertical discharge fans and parapet-type building structures shall be 2 feet (610 mm), provided that such structures are not higher than the top of the fan discharge opening.

507.1 General. Commercial kitchen exhaust hoods shall comply with the requirements of this section. Hoods shall be Type I or II and shall be designed to capture and confine cooking vapors and residues. A Type I or Type II hood shall be installed at or above *appliances* in accordance with Sections 507.2 and 507.3. Where any cooking *appliance* under a single hood requires a Type I hood, a Type I hood shall be installed. Where a Type II hood is required, a Type I or Type II hood shall be installed. Where a Type I hood is installed, the installation of the entire system, including the hood, ducts, exhaust *equipment* and *makeup air* system shall comply with the requirements of Sections 506, 507, 508 and 509.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial exhaust hoods that are *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 710, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1, shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.1.5, 507.2.3, 507.2.5, 507.2.8, 507.3.1, 507.3.3, 507.4 and 507.5.

2. Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 710B, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1, shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.1.5, 507.2.3, 507.2.5, 507.2.8, 507.3.1, 507.3.3, 507.4 and 507.5. Spaces in which such systems are located shall be considered to be kitchens and shall be ventilated in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be ventilated, each individual *appliance* shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

3. Where cooking *appliances* are equipped with integral down-draft exhaust systems and such *appliances* and exhaust systems are *listed* and *labeled* for the application in accordance with NFPA 96, a hood shall not be required at or above them.

4. Smoker ovens with integral exhaust systems, provided that the *appliance* is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, is listed and tested for the application, and complies with Chapter 5.

507.1.1 Operation. Commercial kitchen exhaust hood systems shall operate during the cooking operation. The hood exhaust rate shall comply with the listing of the hood or shall comply with Section 507.5. The exhaust fan serving a Type I hood shall have automatic controls that will activate the fan when any *appliance* that requires such Type I hood is turned on, or a means of interlock shall be provided that will prevent operation of such *appliances* when the exhaust fan is not turned on. Where one or more temperature or radiant energy sensors are used to activate a Type I hood exhaust fan, the fan shall activate not more than 15 minutes after the first *appliance* served by that hood has been turned on. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and *appliances* equipped with standing pilot burners shall not cause the pilot burners to be extinguished. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and cooking *appliances* shall not involve or depend on any component of a fire-extinguishing system.

The net exhaust volumes for hoods shall be permitted to be reduced during part-load cooking conditions, where engineered or *listed* multispeed or variable speed controls automatically operate the exhaust system to maintain capture and removal of cooking effluents as required by this section. Reduced volumes shall not be below that required to maintain capture and removal of effluents from the idle cooking *appliances* that are operating in a standby mode.

507.1.2 Domestic cooking appliances used for commercial purposes. Domestic cooking *appliances* utilized for commercial purposes shall be provided with Type I or Type II hoods as required for the type of *appliances* and processes in accordance with Sections 507.2 and 507.3. Domestic cooking *appliances* utilized for domestic cooking shall comply with Section 505.

~~**Exception:** A maximum of two domestic ranges installed in dwelling units, churches, schools, day care centers, break areas and similar installations.~~

507.1.3 Fuel-burning appliances. Where vented fuel-burning *appliances* are located in the same room or space as the hood, provisions shall be made to prevent the hood system from interfering with normal operation of the *appliance* vents.

507.2 Type I hoods. Type I hoods shall be installed where cooking *appliances* produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Type I hoods shall be installed over *medium-duty, heavy-duty* and *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances*. ~~Type I hoods shall be installed over *light-duty* and *medium-duty cooking appliances* that produce grease or smoke.~~

Exception: A Type I hood shall not be required for an electric cooking *appliance* where an approved testing agency provides documentation that the *appliance* effluent contains 5 mg/m^3 or less of grease when tested at an exhaust flow rate of 500 cfm (0.236 m^3/s) in accordance with UL 710B.

507.2.1 Type I exhaust flow rate label. Type I hoods shall bear a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow rate in cfm per linear foot (1.55 L/s per linear meter) of hood that provides for capture and containment of the exhaust effluent for the cooking *appliances* served by the hood, based on the cooking *appliance* duty classifications defined in this code.

507.2.2 Type I extra-heavy-duty. Type I hoods for use over *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall not cover *heavy-, medium-* or *light-duty appliances*. Such hoods shall discharge to an exhaust system that is independent of other exhaust systems.

507.2.6 Clearances for Type I hood. A Type I hood shall be installed with a *clearance* to combustibles of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

Exceptions:

1. *Clearance* shall not be required from gypsum wallboard or $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) or thicker cementitious wallboard attached to noncombustible structures provided that a smooth, cleanable, nonabsorbent and noncombustible mate-

rial is installed between the hood and the gypsum or cementitious wallboard over an area extending not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in all directions from the hood.

2. Type I hoods *listed* and *labeled* for *clearances* less than 18 inches (457 mm) in accordance with UL 710 shall be installed with the *clearances* specified by such listings.

507.2.7 Type I hoods penetrating a ceiling. Type I hoods or portions thereof penetrating a ceiling, wall or furred space shall comply with Section 506.3.11. ~~Field-applied grease duct enclosure systems, as addressed in Section 506.3.11.2, shall not be utilized to satisfy the requirements of this section.~~ Field-applied enclosure systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use in the configuration required to meet this code section.

507.2.8 Type I grease filters. Type I hoods shall be equipped with grease filters *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1046. Grease filters shall be provided with access for cleaning or replacement. The lowest edge of a grease filter located above the cooking surface shall be not less than the height specified in Table 507.2.8.

TABLE 507.2.8
MINIMUM DISTANCE BETWEEN THE LOWEST EDGE OF A GREASE FILTER AND THE COOKING SURFACE OR THE HEATING SURFACE

TYPE OF COOKING APPLIANCES	HEIGHT ABOVE COOKING SURFACE (feet)
Without exposed flame	0.5
Exposed flame and burners	2
Exposed charcoal and charbroil type	3.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

507.2.9 Grease gutters for Type I hood. Grease gutters shall drain to an *approved* collection receptacle that is fabricated, designed and installed to allow access for cleaning. ~~The container shall have a maximum capacity not exceeding 1 gallon (3.8 L) unless otherwise approved by the *code official*.~~

507.3 Type II hoods. Type II hoods shall be installed above dishwashers and *appliances* ~~*light duty appliances* and *medium duty appliances*~~ that produce heat or moisture and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process, except where the heat and moisture loads from such *appliances* are incorporated into the HVAC system design or into the design of a separate removal system. Type II hoods shall be installed above all *appliances* ~~*light duty appliances* and *medium duty appliances*~~ that produce products of combustion and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Spaces containing cooking *appliances* that do not require Type II hoods shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot (0.00356 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be exhausted, each individual *appliance* that is not required to be installed under a Type II hood shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2). Such additional square footage shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot [0.00356 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$]~~Spaces containing cooking *appliances* that do not require Type II hoods shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 403.3~~.

507.5.5 Dishwashing appliances. The minimum net airflow for Type II hoods used for dishwashing *appliances* shall be 100 cfm per linear foot (155 L/s per linear meter) of hood length.

Exception: Dishwashing *appliances* and *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 507.3.

507.6.1 Capture and containment test. The permit holder shall verify capture and containment performance of the exhaust system. This field test shall be conducted with all *appliances* under the hood at operating temperatures, with all sources of outdoor air providing *makeup air* for the hood operating and with all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hood is located operating. Capture and containment shall be verified visually by observing smoke or steam produced by actual or simulated cooking, such as that provided by smoke generators.

507.6.2 Certification. These tests shall be witnessed by the code official, or by a professional engineer who shall provide certification of performance to the code official.

508.2 Compensating hoods. Manufacturers of compensating hoods shall provide a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow, the maximum makeup airflow or both that provides capture and containment of the exhaust effluent.

Exception: Compensating hoods with *makeup air* supplied only from the front face discharge and side face discharge openings shall not be required to be labeled with the maximum makeup airflow.

509.1 Where required. *Cooking appliances* required by Section 507.2 to have a Type I hood shall be provided with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system complying with the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

510.2 Where required. A hazardous exhaust system shall be required wherever operations involving the handling or processing of hazardous materials, in the absence of such exhaust systems and under normal operating conditions, have the potential to create one of the following conditions:

1. A flammable vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust is present in concentrations exceeding 25 percent of the lower flammability limit of the substance for the expected room temperature.
2. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 4 is present in any concentration.
3. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2 or 3 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

Exception: Laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, except where the concentrations listed in Item 1 are exceeded or a vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2, 3 or 4 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

[F] 510.2.1 Lumber yards and woodworking facilities. *Equipment* or machinery located inside buildings at lumber yards and woodworking facilities that generates or emits combustible dust shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collection and exhaust system installed in accordance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. *Equipment* and systems that are used to collect, process or convey combustible dusts shall be provided with an *approved* explosion-control system.

[F] 510.2.2 Combustible fibers. *Equipment* or machinery within a building that generates or emits combustible fibers shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collecting and exhaust system. Such systems shall comply with this code and the *International Fire Code*.

510.4 Incompatible materials and common shafts. Incompatible materials, as defined in the *International Fire Code*, shall not be exhausted through the same hazardous exhaust system. Hazardous exhaust systems shall not share common shafts with other duct systems, except where such systems are hazardous exhaust systems originating in the same fire area.

Exception: The provisions of this section shall not apply to laboratory exhaust systems where all of the following conditions apply:

1. All of the hazardous exhaust ductwork and other laboratory exhaust within both the occupied space and the shafts are under negative pressure while in operation.
2. The hazardous exhaust ductwork manifolded together within the occupied space must originate within the same fire area.
3. Hazardous exhaust ductwork originating in different fire areas and manifolded together in a common shaft shall meet the provisions of Section 717.5.3, Exception 1, Item 1.1 of the *International Building Code*.
4. Each control branch has a flow-regulating device.
5. Perchloric acid hoods and connected exhaust shall be prohibited from manifolding.
6. Radioisotope hoods are equipped with filtration, carbon beds or both where required by the *registered design professional*.

7. Biological safety cabinets are filtered.

8. Each hazardous exhaust duct system shall be served by redundant exhaust fans that comply with either of the following:

    8.1. The fans shall operate simultaneously in parallel and each fan shall be individually capable of providing the required exhaust rate.

    8.2. Each of the redundant fans is controlled so as to operate when the other fan has failed or is shut down for servicing.

510.5 Design. Systems for removal of vapors, gases and smoke shall be designed by the constant velocity or equal friction methods. Systems conveying particulate matter shall be designed employing the constant velocity method.

510.5.1 Balancing. Systems conveying explosive or radioactive materials shall be prebalanced by duct sizing. Other systems shall~~may~~ be balanced by duct sizing ~~or~~ with balancing devices, such as dampers. Dampers provided to balance airflow shall have securely fixed minimum-position blocking devices to prevent restricting the flow below the required volume or velocity.

510.5.2 Emission control. The design of the system shall be such that the emissions are confined to the area in which they are generated by air currents, hoods or enclosures and shall be exhausted by a duct system to a safe location or treated by removing contaminants.

510.5.3 Hoods required. Hoods or enclosures shall be used where contaminants originate in a limited area of a space. The design of the hood or enclosure shall be such that air currents created by the exhaust systems will capture the contaminants and transport them directly to the exhaust duct.

510.5.4 Contaminant capture and dilution. The velocity and circulation of air in work areas shall be such that contaminants are captured by an airstream at the area where the emissions are generated and conveyed into a product-conveying duct system. Contaminated air from work areas where hazardous contaminants are generated shall be diluted below the thresholds specified in Section 510.2 with air that does not contain other hazardous contaminants.

510.5.5 Makeup air. *Makeup air* from all sources shall be provided during operations at a rate approximately equal to the rate that air is exhausted by the hazardous exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by gravity or mechanical means or both. Mechanical *makeup air* systems shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* intakes shall be located in accordance with Section 401.4.

510.5.6 Clearances. The minimum *clearance* between hoods and combustible construction shall be the *clearance* required by the duct system.

510.5.7 Ducts. Hazardous exhaust duct systems shall extend directly to the exterior of the building and shall not extend into or through ducts and *plenums*.

510.6 Penetrations. Penetrations of structural elements by a hazardous exhaust system shall conform to Sections 510.6.1 through 510.6.4.

Exception: Duct penetrations within Group H-5 *occupancies* as allowed by the *International Building Code*.

510.6.1 Fire dampers and smoke dampers. Fire dampers and smoke dampers are prohibited in hazardous exhaust ducts.

510.6.1.1 Shaft penetrations. Hazardous exhaust ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated shafts shall comply with Section 714.4.1 or 714.4.1.2 of the *International Building Code*.

510.6.2 Floors. Hazardous exhaust systems that penetrate a floor/ceiling assembly shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

510.6.3 Wall assemblies. Hazardous exhaust duct systems that penetrate fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies shall be enclosed in fire-resistance-rated construction from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal, except where the interior of the duct is equipped with an approved automatic fire suppression system. Ducts shall be enclosed in accordance with the *International Building Code* requirements for shaft construction and such enclosure shall have a minimum fire-resistance rating of not less than the highest fire-resistance-rated wall assembly penetrated.

510.6.4 Fire walls. Ducts shall not penetrate a fire wall.

510.7 Suppression required. Ducts shall be protected with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. An approved automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts conveying materials, fumes, mists and vapors that are nonflammable and noncombustible under all conditions and at any concentrations.
2. Automatic fire suppression systems shall not be required in metallic and noncombustible, non-metallic exhaust ducts in semiconductor fabrication facilities.
3. An *approved* automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).
4. For laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, automatic fire protection systems shall not be required in laboratory hoods or exhaust systems.

510.7.1 Duct cleanout.

Ducts conveying combustible dust as part of a dust collection system shall be equipped with cleanouts that are provided with approved access, predesigned to be disassembled for cleaning, or engineered for automatic cleanouts. Where provided, cleanouts shall be located at the base of each vertical duct riser and at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) in horizontal sections of duct.

510.8 Duct construction. Ducts used to convey hazardous exhaust shall be constructed of materials *approved* for installation in such an exhaust system and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of *approved* G90 galvanized sheet steel, with a minimum nominal thickness as specified in Table 510.8.
2. Ducts~~Nonmetallic ducts~~ used in systems exhausting nonflammable corrosive fumes or vapors shall be constructed of nonmetallic materials that exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and that are *listed* and *labeled* for the application.

Where the products being exhausted are detrimental to the duct material, the ducts shall be constructed of alternative materials that are compatible with the exhaust.

TABLE 510.8
MINIMUM DUCT THICKNESS

DIAMETER OF DUCT OR MAXIMUM SIDE DIMENSION	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS		
	Nonabrasive materials	Nonabrasive/abrasive materials	Abrasive materials
0–8 inches	0.028 inch (No. 24 gage)	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)
9–18 inches	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)
19–30 inches	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)
Over 30 inches	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)	0.079 inch (No. 14 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

510.8.1 Duct joints. Ducts shall be made tight with lap joints having a minimum lap of 1 inch (25 mm). Joints used in ANSI/SMACNA Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards and ANSI/SMACNA Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards are also acceptable.

510.8.2 Clearance to combustibles. Ducts shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 510.8.2. Exhaust gases having temperatures in excess of 600ºF (316ºC) shall be exhausted to a *chimney* in accordance with Section 511.2.

TABLE 510.8.2
CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF EXHAUST OR TEMPERATURE OF EXHAUST (°F)	CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES (inches)
Less than 100	1
100–600	12
Flammable vapors	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

510.8.3 Explosion relief. Systems exhausting potentially explosive mixtures shall be protected with an *approved* explosion relief system or by an *approved* explosion prevention system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 69. An explosion relief system shall be designed to minimize the structural and mechanical damage resulting from an explosion or deflagration within the exhaust system. An explosion prevention system shall be designed to prevent an explosion or deflagration from occurring.

510.9 Supports. Ducts shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm). Supports shall be constructed of noncombustible material.

511.1 Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems shall comply with the provisions of Section 510, Sections 511.1.1 through 511.2 and the *International Fire Code*.

511.1.1 Collectors and separators. Collectors and separators involving such systems as centrifugal separators, bag filter systems and similar devices, and associated supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall be located on the exterior of the building or structure. A collector or separator shall not be located nearer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to combustible construction or to an unprotected wall or floor opening, unless the collector is provided with a metal vent pipe that extends above the highest part of any roof with a distance of 30 feet (9144 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Collectors such as “Point of Use” collectors, close extraction weld fume collectors, spray finishing booths, stationary grinding tables, sanding booths, and integrated or machine-mounted collectors shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that the installation is in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.
2. Collectors in independent exhaust systems handling combustible dusts shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that such collectors are installed in compliance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.

511.1.2 Discharge pipe. Discharge piping shall conform to the requirements for ducts, including clearances required for high-heat *appliances*, as contained in this code. A delivery pipe from a cyclone collector shall not convey refuse directly into the firebox of a boiler, furnace, Dutch oven, refuse burner, incinerator or other *appliance*.

511.1.5 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of the *International Fire Code* on all systems that convey combustible dust or combustible refuse or stock that produces combustible dusts in such a manner that the concentration and conditions could create a fire or explosion hazard. Determination of concentrations or conditions that are deemed to not create a fire or explosion hazard shall be based on a Dust Hazard Analysis prepared in accordance with Section 2203.2 of the *International Fire Code*.

512.2 Materials. Subslab soil exhaust system duct material shall be air duct material *listed* and *labeled* to the requirements of UL 181 for Class 0 air ducts, or any of the following piping materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* as building sanitary drainage and vent pipe: cast iron; galvanized steel; copper or copper-alloy pipe and tube of a weight not less than type DWV; and plastic piping.

[F] 513.1 Scope and purpose. This section applies to mechanical and passive smoke control systems that are required by the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations, or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke and heat removal provisions found in Section 910 of the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.4.7 Smoke control system interaction. The design shall consider the interaction effects of the operation of multiple smoke control systems for all design scenarios.

[F] 513.5.3 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by door assemblies complying with the requirements of the *International Building Code* for doors in smoke barriers.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors *listed* for releasing service installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method.
3. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 513.5.3.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716 of the *International Building Code*. The doors shall be close-fitting within operational tolerances and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and, where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required.
4. In Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 of the *International Building Code* and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.5 of the *International Building Code*.
5. Group I-3.
6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

[F] 513.5.3.1 Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where doors are installed across a *corridor*, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.5 of the *International Building Code* and shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire-protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

[F] 513.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The pressure difference across a smoke barrier used to separate smoke zones shall be not less than 0.05-inch water gage (12.4 Pa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

[F] 513.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W - d) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-2)}$$

where:

A = Door area, square feet (m^2).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

F_{dc} = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

ΔP = Design pressure difference, inches (Pa) water gage.

[F] 513.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways. Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 513 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of the *International Building Code* and 909.21 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.8.1 Exhaust rate. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the accumulating smoke layer shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above any walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

[F] 513.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-3)}$$

where:

c = Specific heat of smoke at smoke-layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg • K).

m = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

Q_c = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

T_a = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

T_s = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

[F] 513.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the structural design requirements of the *International Building Code*. Motors driving fans shall not be operating beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts) as determined from measurement of actual current draw. Motors driving fans shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

[F] 513.12.1 Verification. Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A preprogrammed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report. The preprogrammed weekly test shall operate all devices, *equipment* and components used for smoke control.

Exception: Where verification of individual components tested through the preprogrammed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal building operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly testing, where *approved* by the building official and in accordance with both of the following:

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a listed control unit.
2. Testing of all components bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.12.4 Automatic control. Where complete automatic control is required or used, the automatic control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *Interna-*

tional Fire Code, from manual controls provided with *ready access* for the fire department, and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

[F] 513.13.1 Materials. Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or copper alloy, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Copper-alloy compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100ºF (593ºC) and liquidus below 1,500ºF (816ºC). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-copper alloy joints only.

Exception: Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3.
2. Tubing and connected device shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of Neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or movable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing connected to devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

514.1 General. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be installed in accordance with this section. Where required for purposes of energy conservation, energy recovery ventilation systems shall comply with the *International Energy Conservation Code*. Ducted heat recovery ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1812. Nonducted heat recovery ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1815.

514.2 Prohibited applications. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall not be used in the following systems:

1. Hazardous exhaust systems covered in Section 510.
2. Dust, stock and refuse systems that convey explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dust.
3. Smoke control systems covered in Section 513.
4. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type I hoods.
5. Clothes dryer exhaust systems covered in Section 504.

Exception: The application of ERV equipment that recovers sensible heat only utilizing coil-type heat exchangers shall not be limited by this section.

514.4 Recirculated air. Air conveyed within energy recovery systems shall not be considered as recirculated air where the energy recovery ventilation system is constructed to limit cross-leakage between air streams to less than 10 percent ~~or less~~ of the total airflow design capacity.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 6 addresses duct systems used in HVAC systems and some exhaust systems. Some exhaust system ducts are addressed in Chapter 5, such as kitchen exhaust ducts and clothes dryer exhaust ducts. This chapter addresses air plenums such as above-ceiling and below-floor plenums. Section 607 covers fire and smoke dampers, consistent with the requirements of the* International Building Code®.

[BE] 601.2 Air movement in egress elements. Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or *ventilation air* ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a corridor as a source of *makeup air* for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of *makeup air* taken from the corridor.
2. Where located within a *dwelling unit*, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.
3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, use of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.
4. Transfer air movement required to maintain pressurization difference within health care facilities in accordance with ASHRAE 170.

[BE] 601.2.1 Corridor ceiling. Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air *plenum* is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. The corridor is separated from the *plenum* by fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by this code.
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler waterflow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an *approved* engineered smoke control system.

[BE] 601.3 Exits. *Equipment* and ductwork for exit enclosure ventilation shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such *equipment* and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the exit enclosure by ductwork enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
2. Where such *equipment* and ductwork is located within the exit enclosure, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the *exhaust air* shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, such *equipment* and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical *equipment*, with construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.

In each case, openings into fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by self-closing fire-resistance-rated devices in accordance with the *International Building Code* for enclosure wall opening protectives. Exit enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

601.4 Contamination prevention. Exhaust ducts under positive pressure, *chimneys* and vents shall not extend into or pass through ducts or *plenums*.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust systems located in ceiling return air *plenums* over spaces that are permitted to have 10 percent recirculation in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 4. The exhaust duct joints, seams and connections shall comply with Section 603.9.
2. This section shall not apply to *chimneys* and vents that pass through *plenums* where such venting systems comply with one of the following requirements:
    2.1. The venting system shall be listed for positive pressure applications and shall be sealed in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.
    2.2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above ceiling space.
    2.3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

601.5 Return air openings. Return air openings for heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. Openings shall not be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured in any direction from an open combustion chamber, including *factory-built* and *masonry fireplaces* or draft hood of another *appliance* located in the same room or space.
2. Return air shall not be taken from a hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration room as defined in this code.
3. The amount of return air taken from any room or space shall be not greater than the flow rate of supply air delivered to such room or space.
4. Return and transfer openings shall be sized in accordance with the *appliance* or *equipment* manufacturer's installation instructions, ACCA Manual D or the design of the registered design professional.
5. Return air taken from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit*.
6. ~~Taking return air from a crawl space shall not be accomplished through a direct connection to the return side of a forced air furnace. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.~~
7. ~~6~~. Return air shall not be taken from a closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room, crawl space or unconditioned attic.
7. ~~A room or space containing a fuel-burning appliance or fireplace where such room or space serves as the sole source of return air.~~
    ~~7.1. This shall not apply where the fuel-burning appliance is a direct-vent appliance.~~
    ~~7.2. This shall not apply where the room or space complies with the following requirements:~~
        ~~7.2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.~~
        ~~7.2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.~~
        ~~7.2.3. Return air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of any appliance firebox or draft hood in the same room or space.~~
    ~~7.3. This shall not apply to rooms or spaces containing solid fuel-burning appliances, provided that return air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of the appliances.~~
    ~~7.4. This shall not apply to rooms and spaces containing a fireplace provided that return air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the fireplace opening.~~

~~8~~7. Return air shall not be taken from indoor swimming pool enclosures and associated deck areas.

Exceptions:

1. Where the air from such spaces is dehumidified in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 2.
2. Dedicated HVAC systems serving only such spaces.

Exceptions:

1. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited where such return air openings serve the kitchen and are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the cooking *appliances*.

2. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited in a *dwelling unit* where the kitchen and living spaces are in a single room and the cooking *appliance* is electric and located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in any direction from the return air intake opening.

3. Dedicated forced air systems serving only the garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.

602.1 General. Supply, return, exhaust, relief and ventilation air *plenums* shall be limited to uninhabited crawl spaces, areas above a ceiling or below the floor, attic spaces, mechanical *equipment* rooms and the framing cavities addressed in Section 602.3. *Plenums* shall be limited to one fire area. Air systems shall be ducted from the boundary of the fire area served directly to the air-handling *equipment*. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall not be installed within a *plenum*.

602.2 Construction. *Plenum* enclosure construction materials that are exposed to the airflow shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.5 of the *International Building Code* or such materials shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

The use of gypsum boards to form *plenums* shall be limited to systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the building and mechanical system design conditions are such that the gypsum board surface temperature will be maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Supply air *plenums* formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative cooling* systems.

602.2.1 Materials within plenums. Except as required by Sections 602.2.1.1 through 602.2.1.8, materials within *plenums* shall be noncombustible or shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exceptions:

1. Rigid and flexible ducts and connectors shall conform to Section 603.
2. Duct coverings, linings, tape and connectors shall conform to Sections 603 and 604.
3. This section shall not apply to materials exposed within *plenums* ~~in one- and two-family dwellings~~or *mechanical equipment rooms* used as *plenums* in *dwelling units*.
4. This section shall not apply to smoke detectors.
5. Combustible materials fully enclosed within one of the following:
    5.1. Continuous noncombustible raceways or enclosures.
    5.2. Approved gypsum board assemblies.
    5.3. Materials *listed* and *labeled* for installation within a *plenum* and listed for the application.
6. Materials in Group H, Division 5 fabrication areas and the areas above and below the fabrication area that share a common air recirculation path with the fabrication area.

~~7. This section shall not apply to materials exposed within equipment rooms and furnace rooms in dwelling units.~~

602.2.1.1 Wiring. Combustible electrical wires and cables and optical fiber cables exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with NFPA 262, or shall be installed in metal raceways or metal sheathed cable. Combustible optical fiber and communication raceways exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.5, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 2024. Only plenum-rated wires and cables shall be installed in plenum-rated raceways.

602.2.1.2 Fire sprinkler piping. Plastic fire sprinkler piping exposed within a *plenum* shall be used only in wet pipe systems and shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1887.

602.2.1.3 Pneumatic tubing. Combustible pneumatic tubing exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1820.

602.2.1.5 Discrete plumbing and mechanical products in plenums. Where discrete plumbing and mechanical products and appurtenances are located in a *plenum* and have exposed combustible material, they shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 2043.

602.2.1.6 Foam plastic in plenums as interior finish or interior trim. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, and shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. As an alternative to testing to NFPA 286, the foam plastic shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9 of the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm).
3. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

602.2.1.7 Plastic plumbing piping and tubing. Plastic piping and tubing used in plumbing systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exception: Plastic water distribution piping and tubing *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2846 as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), and installed in accordance with its listing.

602.2.1.8 Pipe and duct insulation within plenums. Pipe and duct insulation contained within *plenums*, including insulation adhesives, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Pipe and duct insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Pipe and duct insulation shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Pipe and duct insulation shall not be used to reduce the maximum flame spread and smoke-developed indices except where the pipe or duct and its related insulation, coatings, and adhesives are tested as a composite assembly in accordance with Section 602.2.1.7.

602.3 Stud cavity and joist space plenums. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be utilized as air *plenums* shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Such cavities or spaces shall not be utilized as a *plenum* for supply air.
2. Such cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.
4. Stud wall cavities and joist space *plenums* shall comply with the floor penetration protection requirements of the *International Building Code*.
5. Stud wall cavities and joist space *plenums* shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by *approved* fireblocking as required in the *International Building Code*.

6. Stud wall cavities in the outside walls of building envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air *plenums*.

[BS] 602.4 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, *plenum* spaces shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the *plenum* spaces during floods up to such elevation. If the *plenum* spaces are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, they shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

603.2 Duct sizing. Ducts installed within a single *dwelling unit* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual D, the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions or other approved methods. Ducts installed within all other buildings shall be sized in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* or other equivalent computation procedure.

603.4 Metallic ducts. Metallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in the SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

Exceptions:

1. Ducts installed within single *dwelling units* shall have a minimum thickness as specified in Table 603.4.

2. Domestic clothes dryer exhausts shall have a minimum thickness as specified in Section 504.9.1.

TABLE 603.4
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a]

ROUND DUCT DIAMETER (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	½-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
≤ 12	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)
12 to14	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)
15 to 17	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
18	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)
19 to 20	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)
RECTANGULAR DUCT DIMENSION (inches)	**STATIC PRESSURE**			
	½-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
≤ 8	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)
9 to 10	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)
11 to 12	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
13 to 16	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
17 to 18	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)
19 to 20	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1-inch water gauge = 249 Pa.

a. Ductwork that exceeds 20 inches by dimension or exceeds a pressure of 1-inch water gauge shall be constructed in accordance with SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

TABLE 603.4
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS

DUCT SIZE	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)	EQUIVALENT GAGE (GALVANIZED)	ALUMINUM MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches) [gage]
Round ducts and enclosed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.013	30	0.0159 [26 ga]
Over 14 inches	0.016	28	0.0201 [24 ga]
Exposed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.016	28	0.0201 [24 ga]
Over 14 inches	0.019	26	0.0253 [22 ga]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

603.5.1 Gypsum ducts. The use of gypsum boards to form air shafts (ducts) shall be limited to return air systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the gypsum board surface temperature is maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Supply air ducts formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative cooling* systems.

603.5.2 Phenolic ducts. Nonmetallic phenolic ducts shall be constructed and installed in accordance with the SMACNA *Phenolic Duct Construction Standards*.

603.7 Rigid duct penetrations. Duct system penetrations of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs and air transfer openings in such building components shall be protected as required by Section 607. Ducts in a private garage that penetrate a wall or ceiling that separates a dwelling ~~unit~~ from a private garage shall be continuous, shall be constructed of sheet steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) ~~or other approved noncombustible material of equivalent durability~~ and shall not have openings into the garage. Fire and smoke dampers are not required in such ducts passing through the wall or ceiling separating a dwelling ~~unit~~ from a private garage except where required by Chapter 7 of the *International Building Code*.

603.8.2 Sealing. Ducts shall be sealed, secured and tested prior to concrete encasement or direct burial. Ducts shall be leak tested as required by Section C403 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

603.9 Joints, seams and connections. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* and NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. Joints, longitudinal and transverse seams and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants or tapes. Tapes and mastics used to seal fibrous glass ductwork shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 181A and shall be marked "181 A-P" for pressure-sensitive tape, "181 A-M" for mastic or "181 A-H" for heat-sensitive tape. Tapes and mastics used to seal metallic and flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-FX" for pressure-sensitive tape or "181 B-M" for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system *equipment* shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-C." Closure systems used to seal all ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unlisted duct tape is not permitted as a sealant on any metal ducts.

Exceptions: ~~For ducts having a static pressure classification of less than 2 inches of water column (500 Pa), additional closure systems shall not be required for continuously welded joints and seams and locking type joints and seams. This exception shall not apply to snap lock and button lock type joints and seams located outside of conditioned spaces.~~

1. ~~1.~~ Continuously welded joints and seams in ducts.

~~2. Ducts exposed within the conditioned space that the ducts serve shall not be required to be sealed.~~

~~**603.10.1 For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.** Metal ducts shall be securely supported. Where hung or suspended, metal straps a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in width and equivalent to or heavier gage than the duct being supported shall be used. Straps, when used, shall be at maximum 64 inch (1626 mm) intervals and shall be secure.~~

~~ly attached to the building structure. Straps shall be attached to the duct at a minimum of two points with screws or rivets. Hanger systems shall comply with this section or other approved means.~~
~~Nonmetallic or listed duct systems shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. All equipment shall be supported independently of the duct system except when the duct is used as a support base. When used as a support base, the duct shall be of sufficient strength and designed to support the weight of the unit. Listed bases shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.~~

603.12 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of any newly-installed duct. ~~Ducts installed in attics, crawl spaces or outdoors,~~ Newly-installed ducts insulated in accordance with ~~Section 403.2.1, or Section 503.2.7 of~~ the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* shall be deemed to meet the intent of this section.

603.17 Air dispersion systems (flexible fabric duct systems). Air dispersion systems shall:

1. Be installed entirely in exposed locations.
2. Be utilized in systems under positive pressure.
3. Not pass through or penetrate fire-resistant-rated construction.
4. Be *listed* and *labeled* in compliance with UL 2518.

~~**603.19 Return air intake (nonengineered systems).** If only one central return air grille is installed, it shall be of a size sufficient to return a volume of air compatible with the cfm requirements and the temperature rise limitations specified by the equipment manufacturer. The face velocity of return air grilles shall not exceed 450 feet per minute (fpm) (2.3 m/s). At least one separate return shall be installed on each level of a multilevel structure. For split-level and split-foyer structures, one return may serve more than one level if located within the split area and the total area of the levels does not exceed 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2). Return air grilles shall not be located in bathrooms. The return air from one residential living unit shall not be mixed with the return air from other living units.~~
~~In dwellings with 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) or less of conditioned area, a central return is permitted. When the dwelling contains more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) of conditioned area, additional returns shall be provided. Each return shall serve not more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) of area and shall be located in the area it serves. Return air may travel through the living space to the return air grille if there are no restrictions, such as solid doors, to the air movement. Undercut doors are allowed. When panned joists are used for return air, the structural integrity shall be maintained. Air capacity for joists 16 inches (406 mm) on center shall be a maximum of 375 cubic feet per minute (0.177 m3/s) for 8-inch (203 mm) joists and 525 cubic feet per minute (0.248 m3/s) for 10-inch (254 mm) joists. Wiring located in spaces used for return air ducts shall comply with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.~~

~~**603.20 Under-floor furnace plenums.** Under-floor furnace plenums shall be prohibited in new structures. Modification or repairs to existing under-floor furnace plenums in existing structures shall conform to the requirements of this section.~~

~~**603.20.1 General.** The space shall be cleaned of loose combustible materials and scrap, and shall be tightly enclosed. The ground surface of the space shall be covered with a moisture barrier having a minimum thickness of 4 mils (0.1 mm). Plumbing waste cleanouts shall not be located within the space.~~

~~**603.20.2 Materials.** The under-floor space, including the sidewall insulation, shall be formed by materials having flame spread ratings not greater than 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.~~

~~**603.20.3 Furnace connections.** A duct shall extend from the furnace supply outlet to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the combustible framing. This duct shall comply with the provisions of Section 603. A noncombustible receptacle shall be installed below any floor opening into the plenum in accordance with the following requirements:~~

~~1. The receptacle shall be securely suspended from the floor members and shall not be more than 18 inches (457 mm) below the floor opening.~~

~~2. The area of the receptacle shall extend 3 inches (76 mm) beyond the opening on all sides.~~

~~3. The perimeter of the receptacle shall have a vertical lip at least 1 inch (25 mm) high at the open sides.~~

~~**603.20.4 Access.** Access to an under-floor furnace plenum shall be provided through an opening in the floor with minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).~~

~~**603.20.5 Furnace controls.** The furnace shall be equipped with an automatic control that will start the air-circulating fan when the air in the furnace bonnet reaches a temperature not higher than 150°F (66°C). The furnace shall additionally be equipped with an approved automatic control that limits the outlet air temperature to 200°F (93°C).~~

604.1 General. Duct insulation shall conform to the requirements of Sections 604.2 through 604.13 and the *International Energy Conservation Code*. ~~Replacement or addition of cooling equipment to existing ductwork located in an attic shall require the ductwork to be insulated. Replacement of heating or the addition of cooling equipment in a crawl space or conditioned basement shall not require the existing ductwork to be insulated. Unconditioned basement ductwork shall require insulation with the addition of cooling equipment.~~

604.3 Coverings and linings. Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index not more than 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

Exception: Polyurethane foam insulation that is spray applied to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be subject to all of the following requirements:

1. The foam plastic insulation shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231.
2. The foam plastic insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C).
3. The foam plastic insulation complies with the requirements of Section 2603 of the *International Building Code*.
4. The foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition in accordance with the requirements of Section 2603.4.1.6 of the *International Building Code*.

604.4 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic used as duct coverings and linings shall conform to the requirements of Section 604.

~~**Exceptions:** Spray application of polyurethane foam to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be permitted in one- and two-family dwellings subject to all of the following:~~

~~1. The flame spread index is not greater than 25 and the smoke-developed index is not greater than 450 at the specified installed thickness.~~

~~2. The foam plastic is protected in accordance with the ignition barrier requirements of the *North Carolina Residential Code*, Sections R316.5.3 and R316.5.4.~~

~~3. The foam plastic complies with the requirements of *North Carolina Residential Code*, Section R316.~~

604.5 Appliance insulation. *Listed* and *labeled* *appliances* that are internally insulated shall be considered as conforming to the requirements of Section 604.

604.7 Identification. External duct insulation, except spray polyurethane foam, and factory-insulated flexible duct shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indices of the composite materials. Duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested *C*-values at 75ºF (24ºC) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:

1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
2. For duct wrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch (mm), measured in accordance with recognized industry standards, shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application.

604.9 Thermal continuity. Where a duct liner has been interrupted, a duct covering of equal thermal performance shall be installed.

~~**Exception:** See Section 604.6.~~

604.11 Vapor retarders. Where ducts used for cooling are externally insulated, the insulation shall be covered with a vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or aluminum foil having a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.051 mm). Insulations having a permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or less shall not be required to be covered. Joints and seams shall be sealed to maintain the continuity of the vapor retarder.

Exception: A vapor retarder is not required for spray polyurethane foam insulation having a water vapor permeance of not greater than 3 perms per inch [1722 ng/(s • m^2 • Pa)] at the installed thickness.

604.13 Internal insulation. Materials used as internal insulation and exposed to the airstream in ducts shall be shown to be durable when tested in accordance with UL 181. Exposed internal insulation that is not impermeable to water shall not be used to line ducts or *plenums* from the exit of a cooling coil to the downstream end of the drain pan.

605.2 Approval. Media-type and electrostatic-type air filters shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Media-type air filters shall comply with UL 900. High-efficiency particulate air filters shall comply with UL 586. Electrostatic-type air filters shall comply with UL 867. Air filters utilized within *dwelling units* shall be designed for the intended application and shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled*.

606.2.1 Return air systems. Smoke detectors shall be installed in return air systems with a design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), in the return air duct or *plenum* upstream of any filters, *exhaust air* connections, outdoor air connections, or decontamination *equipment* and *appliances*.

Exception: Smoke detectors are not required in the return air system where all portions of the building served by the air distribution system are protected by area smoke detectors connected to a fire alarm system in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. The area smoke detection system shall comply with Section 606.4.

606.2.2 Common supply and return air systems. Where multiple air-handling systems share common supply or return air ducts or *plenums* with a combined design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), the return air system shall be provided with smoke detectors in accordance with Section 606.2.1.

Exceptions: Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:

~~1. Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for any fan-powered unit serving only one space.~~

~~2. Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:~~

~~2.~~1. Smoke detectors required by Sections 606.2.1 and 606.2.3.

~~2.~~2. An *approved* area smoke detector system located in the return air *plenum* serving such units.

~~2.~~3. An area smoke detector system as prescribed in the exception to Section 606.2.1.

In all cases, the smoke detectors shall comply with Sections 606.4 and 606.4.1.

606.2.3 Return air risers. Where return air risers serve two or more stories and serve any portion of a return air system having a design capacity greater than 15,000 cfm (7.1 m^3/s), smoke detectors shall be installed at each story. Such smoke detectors shall be located upstream of the connection between the return air riser and any air ducts or *plenums*.

[F] 606.4 Controls operation. Upon activation, the smoke detectors shall shut down all operational capabilities of the air distribution system in accordance with the listing and labeling of *appliances* used in the system. Air distribution systems that are part of a smoke control system shall switch to the smoke control mode upon activation of a detector.

[F] 606.4.1 Supervision. The duct smoke detectors shall be connected to a fire alarm system where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2 of the *International Fire Code*. The actuation of a duct smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal, not as a fire alarm.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where the duct smoke detector activates the building's alarm-indicating *appliances*.
2. In *occupancies* not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible signal in an *approved* location. Duct smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an *approved* location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

[BF] 607.1.1 Ducts between shafts. Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with dampers complying with this section.

[BF] 607.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers. Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated walls and are not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.3 through 714.4.3 of the *International Building Code*. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of Section 714.5 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.2 Installation. Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the dampers' listing and Sections 607.2.1 through 607.2.3.

[BF] 607.2.3 Static dampers. Fire dampers and ceiling radiation dampers that are listed for use in static systems shall be installed only in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems that are automatically shut down in the event of a fire.

[BF] 607.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation. Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.1 through 607.3.3.5.

[BF] 607.3.1 Damper testing. *Dampers* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the standards in this section. *Fire dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. *Smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S. *Combination fire/smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Corridor dampers shall comply with requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Corridor dampers shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) velocity across the face of the damper using the UL 555 fire exposure test.

[BF] 607.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings. Fire dampers shall have the minimum rating specified in Table 607.3.2.1.

[BF] TABLE 607.3.2.1
FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hour)

Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	1 1/2
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

[BF] 607.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified for fire dampers in Table 607.3.2.1 and shall have the minimum rating specified for smoke dampers in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings. Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:

1. One-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.3 Damper actuation. Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 through 607.3.3.5 as applicable.

[BF] 607.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation. Primary heat-responsive devices used to actuate fire dampers shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).
2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.4 Access and identification. Access and identification of fire and smoke dampers shall comply with Sections 607.4.1 through 607.4.2.

[BF] 607.4.1 Access. Fire and smoke dampers shall be provided with an *approved* means of access that is large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. Dampers equipped with fusible links, internal operators or both shall be provided with an access door that is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) square or provided with a removable duct section.

[BF] 607.4.1.1 Fire-resistance rating. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

[BF] 607.4.1.2 Restricted access. Where space constraints or physical barriers restrict access to a damper for periodic inspection and testing, the damper shall be a single- or multi-blade damper and shall comply with the remote inspection requirements of NFPA 80 or NFPA 105.

[BF] 607.4.2 Identification. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER.

[BF] 607.5 Where required~~Location and installation~~. Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, ceiling radiation dampers and corridor dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 607.5.1 through 607.5.7 and shall be shown and identified on the building plans by the designer. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or a fire damper and smoke damper shall be provided.

[BF] 607.5.2 Fire barriers. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire barriers shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively, of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and where the fire damper would interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.

3. Such walls are penetrated by fully ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a fully ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage [0.0217 inch (0.55 mm)] thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals. Flexible air connectors shall be permitted in a fully ducted system, limited to the following installations:

    3.1. Nonmetallic flexible connections that connect a duct to an air handling unit or *equipment* located within a mechanical room in accordance with Section 603.9.

    3.2. Nonmetallic flexible air connectors in accordance with Section 603.6.2 that connect an overhead metal duct to a ceiling diffuser where the metal duct and ceiling diffuser are located within the same room.

[BF] 607.5.3 Fire partitions. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exception: In *occupancies* other than Group H, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code* and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.
2. The partitions are tenant partitions in covered and open mall buildings where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the *International Building Code* to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.
3. The duct system is constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:

    3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m^2).

    3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.

    3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.

    3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.

    3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.

    3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by $1^1/_2$-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with rock (mineral) wool batting on all sides.
4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or *exhaust air* as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage in thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

[BF] 607.5.4 Corridors/smoke barriers. A *listed* smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier wall or a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

A corridor damper shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, of the *International Building Code*, are penetrated.

A ceiling radiation damper shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, of the *International Building Code*, is penetrated.

Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.5.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and smoke dampers are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.
2. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barrier penetrations where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.
3. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.
4. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barriers required by Section 407.5 of the *International Building Code* for Group I-2, Condition 2 where the HVAC system is fully ducted in accordance with Section 603 and where buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Building Code* and equipped with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.5.5 Shaft enclosures. Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with listed fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where any of the following apply:
    1.1. Steel exhaust subducts having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts and an exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously, in accordance with Section 909.11 of the *International Building Code*, so as to maintain a continuous airflow upward to the outdoors.
    1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
    1.3. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*, and where the fire damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
    1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. In Group B and R *occupancies* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Building Code*, smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings with steel exhaust subducts, having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm), extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically and the exhaust fan at the upper terminus is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11 of the *International Building Code*, and maintains airflow upward to the outdoors.
3. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an *approved* mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code* and where the smoke damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
5. Fire dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems where dampers are prohibited by this code.

[BF] 607.5.5.1 Continuous upward flow. Fire dampers and smoke dampers shall not be installed in shafts that are required to maintain continuous airflow upward where closure of the damper would result in the loss of airflow.

[BF] 607.5.5.2 Enclosure at the bottom. Shaft enclosures that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall be protected in accordance with Section 713.11 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.6.1 Through penetrations. In *occupancies* other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without shaft enclosure protection provided that a *listed* fire damper is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section 714.5 of the *International Building Code*. For air transfer openings, see Item 6, Section 712.1.9 of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor provided that it meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).
2. The duct shall open into only one *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.
3. The duct shall not exceed a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches for any 100 square feet (64 516 mm^2 per 9.3 m^2) of the floor area.
4. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.
5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed in accordance with Section 607.6.2.1.

[BF] 607.6.2 Membrane penetrations. Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of *approved* materials, in accordance with Section 603, that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.
2. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exceptions:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where exhaust duct or outdoor air duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.5.1.2 of the *International Building Code*, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another *dwelling unit* or tenant space.
   3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

3. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exceptions:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

[BF] 607.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers testing and installation. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be tested in accordance with Section 607.3.1. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed in accordance with the details listed in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing.

[BF] 607.6.2.1.1 Dynamic systems. Ceiling radiation dampers installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire shall be labelled for use in dynamic systems.

[BF] 607.6.2.1.2 Static systems. Static ceiling radiation dampers shall be installed only in systems that are not designed to operate during a fire.

Exceptions:

1. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed at the opening of a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed in a ceiling, the ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed within the same room or area as the ceiling radiation damper.
3. A static ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be installed within a room where an occupant sensor is provided within the room that will shut down the system.

SECTION 608
BALANCING

608.1 Balancing. Air distribution, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be provided with means to adjust the system to achieve the design airflow rates and shall be balanced by an *approved* method. Ventilation air distribution shall be balanced by an *approved* method and such balancing shall verify that the air distribution system is capable of supplying and exhausting the airflow rates required by Chapter 4.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 7 defers to the* International Fuel Gas Code® *for combustion air provisions for gas-fired appliances. This code addresses oil-fired and solid-fuel-fired appliances; therefore, Chapter 7 is brief, referring to the manufacturer for solid-fuel appliances and NFPA 31 for oil-fired appliances. Combustion air must be provided to appliances to prevent poor combustion that can create multiple health and safety hazards.~~

701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

701.2 Dampered openings. Where combustion air openings are provided with volume, smoke or fire dampers, the dampers shall be interlocked with the firing cycle of the *appliances* served, so as to prevent operation of any *appliance* that draws combustion air from the room or space when any of the dampers are closed. Manual dampers shall not be installed in combustion air ducts. Ducts not provided with dampers and that pass through rated construction shall be enclosed in a shaft in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 8 addresses venting means for fuel-fired appliances other than gas-fired. The* International Fuel Gas Code® *addresses gas-fired appliances. Chimneys include masonry and factory built; vents include Type L and pellet vents.*~~

801.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built *chimneys*, *chimney* liners, vents and connectors. This chapter shall govern the utilization of masonry *chimneys*. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

801.2 General. Every fuel-burning *appliance* shall discharge the products of *combustion* to a vent, factory-built *chimney* or masonry *chimney*, except for *appliances* vented in accordance with Section 804. The *chimney* or vent shall be designed for the type of *appliance* being vented.

Exception~~s~~: Commercial cooking *appliances* vented by a Type I hood installed in accordance with Section 507.

~~1. Residential appliances installed in accordance with their listing.~~

801.8 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in *chimneys* and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

801.16.1 Residential and low-heat appliances (general). Flue lining systems for use with residential-type and low-heat *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay flue lining shall be installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. *Listed* and *labeled chimney* lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

801.18.1 Size. The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry *chimneys*, the resizing shall be in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free from obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free from cracks, gaps, perforations or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of *combustion* products, including gases, moisture and creosote. Where an oil-fired *appliance* is connected to an existing masonry *chimney*, such *chimney* flue shall be repaired or relined in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.3 Cleanout. Masonry *chimneys* shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section 801.13.

801.18.4 Clearances. *Chimneys* and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the *International Building Code* and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys without the required airspace *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system *listed* for use in chimneys with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.19 Multistory prohibited. Common venting systems for *appliances* located on more than one floor level shall be prohibited, except where all of the *appliances* served by the common vent are located in rooms or spaces that are accessed only from the outdoors. The *appliance* enclosures shall not communicate with the occupiable areas of the building.

801.20 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. ~~Solvent cement joints between ABS pipe and fittings shall be cleaned. Solvent cement joints between CPVC pipe and fittings or PVC pipe and fittings shall be primed. The primer shall be a contrasting color, or an ultraviolet primer may be used.~~

801.21 Blocked vent switch. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be equipped with a device that will stop burner operation in the event that the venting system is obstructed. Such device shall have a manual reset and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

802.9 Door swing. *Appliance* and *equipment* vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminals. Door-stops or closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

803.6 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 17 for oil-fired heating *appliances*. The dampers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. An automatic vent damper device shall not be installed on an existing *appliance* unless the *appliance* is *listed* and *labeled* and the device is installed in accordance with the terms of its listing. The name of the installer and date of installation shall be marked on a label affixed to the damper device.

803.9 Chimney connector construction. *Chimney* connectors for low-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat not less than that of galvanized steel specified in Table 803.9(1). Connectors for medium-heat *appliances* and high-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel not less than the thickness specified in Table 803.9(2).

TABLE 803.9(1)
MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS
FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (galvanized) (inches)
5 and smaller~~Less than 6~~	0.022 (No. 26 gage)
Larger than 5 and up to 10~~6 to 10~~	0.028 (No. 24 gage)
Larger than 10 and up to 16~~Over 10 through 16~~	0.034 (No. 22 gage)
Larger than 16	0.064 (No. 16 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

803.10.4 Connector pass-through. *Chimney* connectors shall not pass through any floor or ceiling, nor through a fire-resistance-rated wall assembly. *Chimney* connectors for domestic-type *appliances* shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material to reach a masonry *chimney* except where one of the following applies:

1. The connector is *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. The connector is put through a device *labeled* for wall pass-through.
3. The connector has a diameter not larger than 10 inches (254 mm) and is installed in accordance with one of the methods in Table 803.10.4. Concealed metal parts of the pass-through system in contact with flue gases shall be of stainless steel or equivalent material that resists corrosion, softening or cracking up to 1,800ºF (980ºC).

TABLE 803.10.4
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS AND CLEARANCES TO
COMBUSTIBLE WALL MATERIALS FOR DOMESTIC HEATING APPLIANCES[a, b, c, d]

System A (12-inch clearance)	A 3.5-inch-thick brick wall shall be framed into the combustible wall. An 0.625-inch-thick fire-clay liner (ASTM C315 or equivalent)[e] shall be firmly cemented in the center of the brick wall maintaining a 12-inch clearance to combustibles. The clay liner shall run from the outer surface of the bricks to the inner surface of the chimney liner.

System B (9-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) the same inside diameter as the connector shall be utilized. Sheet steel supports cut to maintain a 9-inch clearance to combustibles shall be fastened to the wall surface and to the chimney section. Fasteners shall not penetrate the chimney flue liner. The chimney length shall be flush with the masonry chimney liner and sealed to the masonry with water-insoluble refractory cement. Chimney manufacturers' parts shall be utilized to securely fasten the chimney connector to the chimney section.
System C (6-inch clearance)	A steel ventilated thimble having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage) having two 1-inch air channels shall be installed with a steel chimney connector. Steel supports shall be cut to maintain a 6-inch clearance between the thimble and combustibles. The chimney connector and steel supports shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). One side of the support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides. Glass-fiber insulation shall fill the 6-inch space between the thimble and the supports.
System D (2-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) with a diameter 2 inches larger than the chimney connector shall be installed with a steel chimney connector having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). Sheet steel supports shall be positioned to maintain a 2-inch clearance to combustibles and to hold the chimney connector to ensure that a 1-inch airspace surrounds the chimney connector through the chimney section. The steel support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides and the chimney section shall be fastened to the supports. Fasteners shall not penetrate the liner of the chimney section.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1.0 Btu • in/ft^2 • h • °F = 0.144 W/m^2 • K.

a. Insulation material that is part of the wall pass-through system shall be noncombustible and shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu • in/ft^2 • h • °F or less.
b. All clearances and thicknesses are minimums.
c. Materials utilized to seal penetrations for the connector shall be noncombustible.
d. Connectors for all systems except System B shall extend through the wall pass-through system to the inner face of the flue liner.
e. ASTM C315.

803.10.6 Clearances. Connectors shall have a minimum *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 803.10.6. The *clearances* specified in Table 803.10.6 apply, except where the *listing* and *labeling* of an *appliance* specifies a different *clearance*, in which case the *labeled clearance* shall apply. The *clearance* to combustibles for connectors shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308.

804.2.1 Terminal clearances. *Appliances* designed for natural draft venting and incorporating integral venting means shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 9 inches (229 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building. *Appliances* using forced draft venting shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 12 inches (305 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building.

804.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 378 and shall comply with Sections 804.3.1 through 804.3.8.

804.3.4 Horizontal terminations. Horizontal terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The vent system shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into the building.
4. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. The bottom of the vent termination shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

804.3.8 Mechanical draft systems for manually fired appliances and fireplaces. A mechanical draft system shall be permitted to be used with manually fired *appliances* and fireplaces where such system complies with all of the following requirements:

1. The mechanical draft device shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 378, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. A device shall be installed that produces visible and audible warning upon failure of the mechanical draft device or loss of electrical power, at any time that the mechanical draft device is turned on. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.
3. A smoke detector shall be installed in the room with the *appliance* or fireplace. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.

805.2 Solid fuel appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* installed in *dwelling units* with solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT" and "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Exception: *Chimneys* for use with open *combustion* chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Chimneys for use with open *combustion* chamber *appliances* installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating *Appliance Chimney"* or "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

805.3 Factory-built fireplaces. *Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

805.4 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a factory-built *chimney* assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the *chimney* shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the *chimney* assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

805.5 Support. Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

805.6 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* for medium-heat *appliances* producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000ºF (538ºC) measured at the entrance to the *chimney* shall comply with UL 959.

805.7 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

805.8 Insulation shield. ~~*Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.~~Where factory-built *chimneys* pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the *chimney* and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the *chimney* manufacturer's installation instructions. Where *chimneys* pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed chimney* system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 9 focuses on specific types of appliances and fireplaces. It also addresses heat-rejection equipment, combustion engines, gas turbines, kilns, fuel cells, evaporative coolers, radiant heating systems and hydrogen systems.*~~

901.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the *appliances* and *equipment* specifically identified herein and factory-built fireplaces. The approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of gas-fired *appliances* shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

901.2 General. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this chapter, in addition to the other requirements of this code.

901.3 Hazardous locations. Fireplaces and solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall not be installed in hazardous locations.

901.4 Solid fuel-burning fireplaces and appliances in Group I-2, Condition 2. In Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies*, solid fuel-burning fireplaces and *appliances* are prohibited.

902.2 Fireplace accessories. *Listed* and *labeled* fireplace accessories shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Fireplace accessories shall comply with UL 907.

903.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of approved factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. *Listed* and *labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

903.4 Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

905.1 General. Fireplace stoves and solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737. Solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1482. Fireplace inserts intended for installation in fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the requirements of UL 1482 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. New wood-burning residential hydronic heaters shall be EPA certified.

905.2 Connection to fireplace. The connection of solid fuel *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections 801.7 and 801.10.

905.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. *Listed* and *labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

906.1 General. Factory-built barbecue *appliances* shall be of an *approved* type and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, this chapter and Chapters 3, 5, 7 and 8, and the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

908.1 General. A cooling tower used in conjunction with an air-conditioning *appliance* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Factory-built cooling towers shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

908.5 Water supply. Cooling towers, evaporative coolers and fluid coolers shall be provided with an approved water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.

910.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum *clearance* shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where these *clearances* are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required *clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum *clearance* shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum *clearance*.

912.3 Clearances. Heaters shall be installed with *clearances* from combustible material in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

915.2 Powered equipment and appliances. Permanently installed *equipment* and *appliances* powered by internal *combustion* engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 37.

916.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1261. Pool and spa heat pump water heaters shall comply with UL 1995, UL/CSA 60335-2-40 or CSA C22.2 No. 236.

> **Exception:** Portable residential spas and portable residential exercise spas shall comply with UL 1563 or CSA C22.2 No. 218.1.

917.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking *appliances* that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles and barbecues, shall be *listed, labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Commercial electric cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 197. Household electric ranges shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858. Microwave cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923. Oil-burning stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 896. Solid-fuel-fired ovens shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2162.

917.2 Domestic appliances. Cooking *appliances* installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type *appliances* for domestic use.

917.3 Installation of microwave oven over a cooking appliance. The installation of a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* or microwave oven over a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* shall conform to the terms of the upper *appliance's listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

918.1 Forced-air furnaces. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 727. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40. Solid fuel furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 391. Forced-air furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

918.2 Heat pumps. Electric heat pumps shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

918.7 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. When a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5-inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is *listed* and *labeled* for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from *heat exchangers* unless *listed* and *labeled* for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted provided the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

920.4 Prohibited uses. In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, suspended-type unit heaters are prohibited in corridors, exit access stairways and ramps, exit stairways and ramps, and patient sleeping areas.

922.1 General. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall comply with NFPA 31 and UL 896.

923.1 General. Kilns shall be *listed* and *labeled* unless otherwise approved in accordance with Section 105.2. Electric kilns shall comply with UL 499. The approval of unlisted appliances in accordance with Section 105.2 shall be based on approved engineering evaluation.

927.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be *listed* for the application.

927.2 Clearances. *Clearances* for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code* and NFPA 70.

927.3 Installation on wood or steel framing. Radiant panels installed on wood or steel framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or shall be mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel installation instructions.
3. Unless *listed* and *labeled* for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

928.1 General. Evaporative cooling *equipment* shall:

1. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Be installed on level platforms in accordance with Section 304.10.

3. Have openings in exterior walls or roofs flashed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
4. Be provided with an approved water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.
5. Have air intake opening locations in accordance with Section 401.4.

SECTION 929
UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

929.1 General. *Unvented alcohol fuel-burning decorative appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1370 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing, manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapter 3.

SECTION 930
LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FANS

930.1 General. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and *labeled* in accordance with AMCA 230, *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 9~~2~~931
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

9~~2~~931.1 **Baseboard convectors.** Electric baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

SECTION 93~~0~~2
DUCT HEATERS

93~~0~~2.1 **General.** Electric duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1996.

93~~0~~2.2 **Installation.** Electric duct heaters shall be installed so they will not create a fire hazard. Class I ducts, duct coverings and linings shall be interrupted at each heater to provide the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Such interruptions are not required for duct heaters *listed* and *labeled* for zero clearance to *combustible materials*. Insulation installed in the immediate area of each heater shall be classified for the maximum temperature produced on the duct surface.

93~~0~~2.3 **Installation with heat pumps and air conditioners.** Duct heaters located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a heat pump or air conditioner shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such installations. The heat pump or air conditioner shall additionally be *listed* and *labeled* for such duct heater installations.

93~~0~~2.4 **Access.** Duct heaters shall be ~~accessible for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.~~ located to allow access for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.

93~~0~~2.5 **Fan interlock.** The fan circuit shall be provided with an interlock to prevent heater operation when the fan is not operating.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 10 addresses boilers, water heaters, expansion tanks and pressure vessels in general, such as compressed air vessels. This chapter includes requirements for components of hydronic HVAC systems, with the focus being on safety, maintenance, testing and safety control devices.*~~

1001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, *alteration* and repair of boilers, water heaters and pressure vessels.

Exceptions:

1. Pressure vessels used for unheated water supply.
2. Portable unfired pressure vessels and Interstate Commerce Commission containers.
3. Containers for bulk oxygen and medical gas.
4. Unfired pressure vessels having a volume of 5 cubic feet (0.14 m^3) or less operating at pressures not exceeding 250 pounds per square inch (psi) (1724 kPa) and located within *occupancies* of Groups B, F, H, M, R, S and U.
5. Pressure vessels used in refrigeration systems that are regulated by Chapter 11 of this code.
6. Pressure tanks used in conjunction with coaxial cables, telephone cables, power cables and other similar humidity control systems.
7. Any boiler or pressure vessel subject to inspection by federal or state inspectors. See N.C.G.S. Chapter 95, Article 69.10 for a complete list of equipment that is exempt from this code but under the jurisdiction of the North Carolina Department of Labor.

1002.1 General. Potable water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall be *listed* and *labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the *International Plumbing Code* and this code. Water heaters shall be capable of being removed without first removing a permanent portion of the building structure. The potable water connections and relief valves for all water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*. Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174 or UL 1453. Commercial electric water heaters shall comply with UL 1453. Oil-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Solid-fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523. Solar thermal water heating systems shall comply with Chapter 14 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1004.1 Standards. Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section I or IV. Controls and safety devices for boilers with fuel input ratings of less than 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of ASME CSD-1. Controls and safety devices for boilers with inputs greater than or equal to 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 85. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 834. Solid-fuel-fired boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2523.

1004.3 Working clearance. *Clearances* shall be maintained around boilers, generators, heaters, tanks and related *equipment* and *appliances* so as to permit inspection, servicing, repair, replacement and visibility of all gauges. Where boilers are installed or replaced, *clearance* shall be provided to allow access for inspection, maintenance and repair. Passageways around all sides of boilers shall have an unobstructed width of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), unless otherwise *approved*.

1004.3.1 Top clearance. *Clearances* from the tops of boilers to the ceiling or other overhead obstruction shall be in accordance with Table 1004.3.1.

1006.1 Safety valves for steam boilers. Steam boilers shall be protected with a safety valve~~(s)~~.

1006.2 Safety relief valves for hot water boilers. Hot water boilers shall be protected with a safety relief valve~~(s)~~.

1006.4 Approval of safety and safety relief valves. Safety and safety relief valves shall be *listed* and *labeled*, and shall have a minimum rated capacity for the *equipment* or *appliances* served. Safety and safety relief valves shall be set at not greater than the nameplate pressure rating of the boiler or pressure vessel.

1006.6 Safety and relief valve discharge. Safety and relief valve discharge pipes shall be of rigid pipe that is *approved* for the temperature of the system. High-pressure-steam safety valves shall be vented to the outside of the structure. The discharge piping serving pressure relief valves, temperature relief valves and combinations of such valves shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air break located in the same room as the *appliance*.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air break.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or *equipment*.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the boiler or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.
10. Not terminate more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor or waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 of the *International Plumbing Code* or materials tested, rated and approved for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.

1009.1 Where required. An expansion tank shall be installed in every hot water system. For multiple boiler installations, not less than one expansion tank is required. Expansion tanks shall be of the closed or open type. Tanks shall be rated for the pressure of the hot water system.

Exception: Expansion tanks shall not be required in the collector loop of drain-back systems.

1009.2 Closed-type expansion tanks. Closed-type expansion tanks shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Expansion tanks for systems designed to have an operating pressure in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa) shall be constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*. The size of the tank shall be based on the capacity of the hot-water-heating system. The minimum size of the tank shall be determined in accordance with the following equation ~~where all necessary information is known~~:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

(Equation 10-1)

For SI:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.000738T - 0.03348)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

where:

V_t = Minimum volume of tanks (gallons) (L).

V_s = Volume of system, not including expansion tanks (gallons) (L).

T = Average operating temperature (°F) (°C).

P_a = Atmospheric pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_f = Fill pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_o = Maximum operating pressure (psi) (kPa).

~~Where all necessary information is not known, the minimum size of the tank shall be determined from Table 1009.2.~~

~~TABLE 1009.2~~
~~CLOSED-TYPE EXPANSION TANK SIZING~~

~~SYSTEM VOLUME IN GALLONS~~	~~TANK CAPACITIES IN GALLONS~~	
	~~Prossurized Diaphragm Type~~	~~Nonpressurized Type~~
~~100~~	~~9~~	~~15~~
~~200~~	~~17~~	~~30~~
~~300~~	~~25~~	~~45~~
~~400~~	~~33~~	~~60~~
~~500~~	~~42~~	~~75~~
~~1,000~~	~~83~~	~~150~~
~~2,000~~	~~165~~	~~300~~

~~For SI: 1 gallon = 3.795 L.~~

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:** Chapter 11 provides for the protection of life and property from the potential fire and health hazards associated with refrigerant chemicals and the machinery that contains such chemicals. Some refrigerants are toxic, some are flammable and some are both. This chapter refers to the* International Fire Code®*, ASHRAE 15 and IIAR standards 2 through 5.~~

1101.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of refrigeration systems that vaporize and liquefy a fluid during the refrigerating cycle. Permanently installed refrigerant storage systems and other components shall be considered as part of the refrigeration system to which they are attached.

1101.1.1 Refrigerants other than ammonia. Refrigerant piping design and installation for systems containing a refrigerant other than ammonia, including pressure vessels and pressure relief devices, shall comply with this chapter and ASHRAE 15.

1101.1.2 Ammonia refrigerant. Refrigeration systems using ammonia as the refrigerant shall comply with IIAR 2, IIAR 3, IIAR 4 and IIAR 5 and shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

1101.2 Factory-built equipment and appliances. *Listed* and *labeled* self-contained, factory-built *equipment* and *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ~~, or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.~~ the applicable standards specified in Table 1101.2. Such *equipment* and *appliances* are deemed to meet the design, manufacture and factory test requirements of this code if installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 1101.2
FACTORY-BUILT EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

EQUIPMENT	STANDARDS
Refrigeration fittings, including press-connect, flared and threaded	UL 109 and UL 207
Air-conditioning equipment	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Packaged terminal air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 484 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Split-system air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Dehumidifiers	UL 474 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Unit coolers	UL 412 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Commercial refrigerators, freezers, beverage coolers and walk-in coolers	UL 471 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Refrigerating units and walk-in coolers	UL 427 or UL 60335-2-89
Refrigerant-containing components and accessories	UL 207

1101.5 Fuel gas connection. Fuel gas devices, *equipment* and *appliances* used with refrigeration systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

1101.6 Maintenance. Mechanical refrigeration systems shall be maintained in proper operating condition, free from accumulations of oil, dirt, waste, excessive corrosion, other debris and leaks.

1101.7 Change in refrigerant type. The type of refrigerant in refrigeration systems having a refrigerant circuit containing more than 220 pounds (99.8 kg) of Group A1 or 30 pounds (13.6 kg) of any other group refrigerant shall not be changed without prior notification to the code official and compliance with the applicable code provisions for the new refrigerant type.

[F] 1101.8 Refrigerant discharge. Notification of refrigerant discharge shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

1101.9 Locking access port caps. ~~Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking type tamper-resistant caps or shall be otherwise secured to prevent unauthorized access.~~

~~**Exception:** This section shall not apply to refrigerant circuit access ports on *equipment* installed in controlled areas such as on roofs with locked access hatches or doors.~~Deleted.

1102.1 General. The system classification, allowable refrigerants, maximum quantity, enclosure requirements, location limitations, and field pressure test requirements shall be determined as follows:

1. Determine the refrigeration system's classification, in accordance with Section 1103.3.
2. Determine the refrigerant classification in accordance with Section 1103.1.
3. Determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in accordance with Section 1104, based on type of refrigerant, system classification and *occupancy*.
4. Determine the system enclosure requirements in accordance with Section 1104.
5. Refrigeration *equipment* and *appliance* location and installation shall be subject to the limitations of Chapter 3.
6. Nonfactory-tested, field-erected *equipment* and *appliances* shall be pressure tested in accordance with Section 1110.

1102.2.2.3 Reclaimed refrigerants. Used refrigerants shall not be reused in a different owner's *equipment* or *appliances* unless tested and found to meet the purity requirements of AHRI 700. Contaminated refrigerants shall not be used unless reclaimed and found to meet the purity requirements of AHRI 700.

1102.3 Access port protection. ~~Refrigerant access ports shall be protected in accordance with Section 1101.9 whenever refrigerant is added to or recovered from refrigeration or air-conditioning systems.~~Deleted.

TABLE 1103.1
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-11[d]	CCl_3F	trichlorofluoromethane	A1	0.39	1,100	6.2	C1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-12[d]	CCl_2F_2	dichlorodifluoromethane	A1	5.6	18,000	90	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13[d]	$CClF_3$	chlorotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13B1[d]	$CBrF_3$	bromotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-14	CF_4	tetrafluoromethane (carbon tetrafluoride)	A1	25	110,000	400	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-22	$CHClF_2$	chlorodifluoromethane	A1	13	59,000	210	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-23	CHF_3	trifluoromethane (fluoroform)	A1	7.3	41,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-30	CH_2Cl_2	dichloromethane (methylene chloride)	B1	—	—	—	—	—
R-32	CH_2F_2	difluoromethane (methylene fluoride)	A2[c]	4.8	36,000	77	1,000	1-4-0
R-40	CH_3Cl	chloromethane (methyl chloride)	B2	—	—	—	—	—
R-50	CH_4	methane	A3	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-113[d]	CCl_2FCClF_2	1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane	A1	1.2	2,600	20	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-114[d]	$CClF_2CClF_2$	1,2-dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	8.7	20,000	140	1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-115	$CClF_2CF_3$	chloropentafluoroethane	A1	47	120,000	760	1,000	—
R-116	CF_3CF_3	hexafluoroethane	A1	34	97,000	550	1,000	1-0-0
R-123	$CHCl_2CF_3$	2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	B1	3.5	9,100	57	50	2-0-0[b]
R-124	$CHClFCF_3$	2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	3.5	10,000	56	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-125	CHF_2CF_3	pentafluoroethane	A1	23	75,000	370	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-134a	CH_2FCF_3	1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	13	50,000	210	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-141b	CH_3CCl_2F	1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	—	0.78	2,600	12	500	2-1-0
R-142b	CH_3CClF_2	1-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane	A2	5.1	20,000	83	1,000	2-4-0
R-143a	CH_3CF_3	1,1,1-trifluoroethane	A2[c]	4.5	21,000	70	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-152a	CH_3CHF_2	1,1-difluoroethane	A2	2.0	12,000	32	1,000	1-4-0
R-170	CH_3CH_3	ethane	A3	0.54	7,000	8.7	1,000	2-4-0
R-E170	CH_3OCH_3	Methoxymethane (dimethyl ether)	A3	1.0	8,500	16	1,000	—
R-218	$CF_3CF_2CF_3$	octafluoropropane	A1	43	90,000	690	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-227ea	CF_3CHFCF_3	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-heptafluoropropane	A1	36	84,000	580	1,000	—
R-236fa	$CF_3CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane	A1	21	55,000	340	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-245fa	$CHF_2CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane	B1	12	34,000	190	300	2-0-0[b]
R-290	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	A3	0.56	5,300	9.5	1,000	2-4-0
R-C318	$-(CF_2)_4-$	octafluorocyclobutane	A1	41	80,000	660	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (50.0/50.0)	A1	10	28,000	160	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (60.0/40.0)	A1	11	30,000	170	1,000	—
R-401A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (53.0/13.0/34.0)	A1	6.6	27,000	110	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401B	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (61.0/11.0/28.0)	A1	7.2	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401C	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (33.0/15.0/52.0)	A1	5.2	20,000	84	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402A	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (60.0/2.0/38.0)	A1	17	66,000	270	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402B	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (38.0/2.0/60.0)	A1	15	63,000	240	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403A	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/75.0/20.0)	A2	7.6	33,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403B	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/56.0/39.0)	A1	18	70,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-404A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a (44.0/52.0/4.0)	A1	31	130,000	500	1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-405A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/142b/C318 (45.0/7.0/5.5/42.5)	—	16	57,000	260	1,000	—
R-406A	zeotrope	R-22/600a/142b (55.0/4.0/41.0)	A2	4.7	21,000	25	1,000	—
R-407A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (20.0/40.0/40.0)	A1	19	83,000	300	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (10.0/70.0/20.0)	A1	21	79,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (23.0/25.0/52.0)	A1	18	81,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407D	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (15.0/15.0/70.0)	A1	16	68,000	250	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407E	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (25.0/15.0/60.0)	A1	17	80,000	280	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407F	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (30.0/30.0/40.0)	A1	20	95,000	320	1,000	—
R-407G	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (2.5/2.5/95.0)	A1	13	52,000	210	1,000	—
R-407H	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (32.5/15.0/52.5)	A1	19	92,000	300	1,000	—
R-408A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/22 (7.0/46.0/47.0)	A1	21	95,000	340	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409A	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (60.0/25.0/15.0)	A1	7.1	29,000	110	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409B	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (65.0/25.0/10.0)	A1	7.3	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410A	zeotrope	R-32/125 (50.0/50.0)	A1	26	140,000	420	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410B	zeotrope	R-32/125 (45.0/55.0)	A1	27	140,000	430	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-411A	zeotrope	R-127/22/152a (1.5/87.5/11.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	46	990	—
R-411B	zeotrope	R-1270/22/152a (3.0/94.0/3.0)	A2	2.8	13,000	45	980	—
R-412A	zeotrope	R-22/218/142b (70.0/5.0/25.0)	A2	5.1	22,000	82	1,000	—
R-413A	zeotrope	R-218/134a/600a (9.0/88.0/3.0)	A2	5.8	22,000	94	1,000	—
R-414A	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (51.0/28.5/4.0/16.5)	A1	6.4	26,000	100	1,000	—
R-414B	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (50.0/39.0/1.5/9.5)	A1	6.0	23,000	95	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-415A	zeotrope	R-22/152a (82.0/18.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	47	1,000	—
R-415B	zeotrope	R-22/152a (25.0/75.0)	A2	2.1	12,000	34	1,000	—
R-416A	zeotrope	R-134a/124/600 (59.0/39.5/1.5)	A1	3.9	14,000	62	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (46.6/50.0/3.4)	A1	3.5	13,000	56	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (79.0/18.3/2.7)	A1	4.3	15,000	70	1,000	—
R-417C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (19.5/78.8/1.7)	A1	5.4	21,000	87	1,000	—
R-418A	zeotrope	R-290/22/152a (1.5/96.0/2.5)	A2	4.8	22,000	77	1,000	—
R-419A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (77.0/19.0/4.0)	A2	4.2	15,000	67	1,000	—

R-419B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (48.5/48.0/3.5)	A2	4.6	17,000	74	1,000	—
R-420A	zeotrope	R-134a/142b (88.0/12.0)	A1	12	45,000	190	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421A	zeotrope	R-125/134a (58.0/42.0)	A1	17	61,000	280	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421B	zeotrope	R-125/134a (85.0/15.0)	A1	21	69,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (85.1/11.5/3.4)	A1	18	63,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (55.0/42.0/3.0)	A1	16	56,000	250	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (82.0/15.0/3.0)	A1	18	62,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422D	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (65.1/31.5/3.4)	A1	16	58,000	260	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422E	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (58.0/39.3/2.7)	A1	16	57,000	260	1,000	—
R-423A	zeotrope	R-134a/227ea (52.5/47.5)	A1	19	59,000	310	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-424A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/600/601a (50.5/47.0/0.9/1.0/0.6)	A1	6.2	23,000	100	970	2-0-0[b]
R-425A	zoetrope	R-32/134a/227ea (18.5/69.5/12.0)	A1	16	72,000	260	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-426A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/601a (5.1/93.0/1.3/0.6)	A1	5.2	20,000	83	990	—
R-427A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a (15.0/25.0/10.0/50.0)	A1	18	79,000	290	1,000	2-1-0
R-428A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/290/600a (77.5/20.0/0.6/1.9)	A1	23	83,000	370	1,000	—
R-429A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a/600a (60.0/10.0/30.0)	A3	0.81	6,300	13	1,000	—
R-430A	zeotrope	R-152a/600a (76.0/24.0)	A3	1.3	8,000	21	1,000	—
R-431A	zeotrope	R-290/152a (71.0/29.0)	A3	0.69	5,500	11	1,000	—
R-432A	zeotrope	R-1270/E170 (80.0/20.0)	A3	0.13	1,200	2.1	700	—
R-433A	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (30.0/70.0)	A3	0.34	3,100	5.5	880	—
R-433B	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (5.0-95.0)	A3	0.51	4,500	8.1	950	—
R-433C	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (25.0-75.0)	A3	0.41	3,600	6.6	790	—
R-434A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/600a (63.2/18.0/16.0/2.8)	A1	20	73,000	320	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-435A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a (80.0/20.0)	A3	1.1	8,500	17	1,000	—
R-436A	zeotrope	R-290/600a (56.0/44.0)	A3	0.50	4,000	8.1	1,000	—
R-436B	zeotrope	R-290/600a (52.0/48.0)	A3	0.51	4,000	8.1	1,000	—
R-437A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600/601 (19.5/78.5/1.4/0.6)	A1	5.0	19,000	82	990	—
R-438A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600/601a (8.5/45.0/44.2/1.7/0.6)	A1	4.9	20,000	79	990	—

R-439A	zeotrope	R-32/125/600a (50.0/47.0/3.0)	A2	4.7	26,000	76	990	—
R-440A	zeotrope	R-290/134a/152a (0.6/1.6/97.8)	A2	1.9	12,000	31	1,000	—
R-441A	zeotrope	R-170/290/600a/600 (3.1/54.8/6.0/36.1)	A3	0.39	3,200	6.3	1,000	—
R-442A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/152a/227ea (31.0/31.0/30.0/3.0/5.0)	A1	21	100,000	330	1,000	—
R-443A	zeotrope	R-1270/290/600a (55.0/40.0/5.0)	A3	0.19	1,700	3.1	580	—
R-444A	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (12.0/5.0/83.0)	A2[c]	5.1	21,000	81	850	—
R-444B	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (41.5/10.0/48.5)	A2[c]	4.3	23,000	69	890	—
R-445A	zeotrope	R-744/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/9.0/85.0)	A2[c]	4.2	16,000	67	930	—
R-446A	zeotrope	R-32/1234ze(E)/600 (68.0/29.0/3.0)	A2[c]	2.5	16,000	39	960	—
R-447A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/3.5/28.5)	A2[c]	2.6	16,000	42	900	—
R-447B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/8.0/24.0)	A2[c]	23	30,000	360	970	—
R-448A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (26.0/26.0/20.0/21.0/7.0)	A1	24	110,000	390	890	—
R-449A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (24.3/24.7/25.3/25.7)	A1	23	100,000	370	830	—
R-449B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (25.2/24.3/23.2/27.3)	A1	23	100,000	370	850	—
R-449C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (20.0/20.0/31.0/29.0)	A1	23	98,000	360	800	—
R-450A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E) (42.0/58.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	880	—
R-451A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (89.8/10.2)	A2[c]	5.3	18,000	81	520	—
R-451B	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (88.8/11.2)	A2[c]	5.3	18,000	81	530	—
R-452A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (11.0/59.0/30.0)	A1	27	10,000	440	780	—
R-452B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (67.0/7.0/26.0)	A2[c]	23	30,000	360	870	—
R-452C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (12.5/61.0/26.5)	A1	27	100,000	430	800	—
R-453A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/600/601a (20.0/20.0/53.8/5.0/0.6/0.6)	A1	7.8	34,000	120	1,000	—
R-454A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (35.0/65.0)	A2[c]	28	16,000	450	690	—
R-454B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (68.9/31.1)	A2[c]	22	19,000	360	850	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-454C	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (21.5/78.5)	A2[c]	29	19,000	460	620	—
R-455A	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (3.0/21.5/75.5)	A2[c]	23	30,000	380	650	—

R-456A	zeotrope	R-32/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/45.0/49.0)	A1	20	77,000	320	900	—
R-457A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (18.0/70.0/12.0)	A2[c]	25	15,000	400	650	—
R-458A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/236fa (20.5/4.0/61.4/13.5/0.6)	A1	18	76,000	280	1,000	—
R-459A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (68.0/26.0/6.0)	A2[c]	23	27,000	360	870	—
R-459B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (21.0/69.0/10.0)	A2[c]	30	16,000	470	640	—
R-460A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (12.0/52.0/14.0/22.0)	A1	24	92,000	380	650	—
R-460B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (28.0/25.0/20.0/27.0)	A1	25	120,000	400	950	—
R-461A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a/227ea/600a (55.0/5.0/32.0/5.0/3.0)	A1	17	61,000	270	1,000	—
R-462A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a/600 (9.0/42.0/2.0/44.0/3.0)	A2	3.9	16,000	62	1,000	—
R-463A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/1234yf/134a (6.0/36.0/30.0/14.0/14.0)	A1	19	98,000	300	990	—
R-500[e]	azeotrope	R-12/152a (73.8/26.2)	A1	7.6	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-501[d]	azeotrope	R-22/12 (75.0/25.0)	A1	13	54,000	210	1,000	—
R-502[e]	azeotrope	R-22/115 (48.8/51.2)	A1	21	73,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-503[e]	azeotrope	R-23/13 (40.1/59.9)	—	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-504[d]	azeotrope	R-32/115 (48.2/51.8)	—	28	140,000	450	1,000	—
R-507A	azeotrope	R-125/143a (50.0/50.0)	A1	32	130,000	520	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508A	azeotrope	R-23/116 (39.0/61.0)	A1	14	55,000	220	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508B	azeotrope	R-23/116 (46.0/54.0)	A1	13	52,000	200	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-509A	azeotrope	R-22/218 (44.0/56.0)	A1	24	75,000	390	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-510A	azeotrope	R-E170/600a (88.0/12.0)	A3	0.87	7,300	14	1,000	—
R-511A	azeotrope	R-290/E170 (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.59	5,300	9.5	1,000	—
R-512A	azeotrope	R-134a/152a (5.0/95.0)	A2	1.9	11,000	31	1,000	—
R-513A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (56.0/44.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	650	—
R-513B	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (58.5/41.5)	A1	21	74,000	330	640	—
R-514A	azeotrope	R-1336mzz(S)/1130(E) (74.7/25.3)	B1	0.86	2,400	14	320	—
R-515A	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (88.0/12.0)	A1	19	62,000	300	810	—
R-516A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/152a (77.5/8.5/14.0)	A2	7.0	27,000	110	590	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED			[F] DE-

REFRIGERANT			CLASSIFICATION	SPACE				GREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-600	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	A3	0.15	1,000	2.4	1,000	1-4-0
R-600a	$CH(CH_3)_2CH_3$	2-methylpropane (isobutane)	A3	0.59	4,000	9.6	1,000	2-4-0
R-601	$CH_3CH_2CH_2$ CH_2CH_3	pentane	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	600	—
R-601a	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2C$ H_3	2-methylbutane (isopentane)	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	600	—
R-610	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2C$ H_3	ethoxyethane (ethyl ether)	—	—	—	—	400	—
R-611	$HCOOCH_3$	methyl formate	B2	—	—	—	100	—
R-718	H_2O	water	A1	—	—	—	—	0-0-0
R-744	CO_2	carbon dioxide	A1	4.5	40,000	72	5,000	2-0-0[b]
R-1130(E)	CHCl=CHCl	trans-1,2-dichloroethene	B1	0.25	1,000	4	200	—
R-1132a	$CF_2=CH_2$	1,1-difluoroethylene	A2	2.0	13,000	33	500	—
R-1150	$CH_2=CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	A3	—	—	—	200	1-4-2
R-1224yd(Z)	$CF_3CF=CHCl$	(Z)-1-chloro-2,3,3,3-tetrafluoroethylene	A1	23	60,000	360	1,000	—
R-1233zd(E)	$CF_3CH=CHCl$	trans-1-chloro-3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propene	A1	5.3	16,000	85	800	—
R-1234yf	$CF_3CF=CH_2$	2,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	A2[c]	4.7	16,000	75	500	—
R-1234ze(E)	$CF_3CH=CHF$	trans-1,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	A2[c]	4.7	16,000	75	800	—
R-1270	$CH_3CH=CH_2$	Propene (propylene)	A3	0.1	1,000	1.7	500	1-4-1
R-1336mzz(Z)	$CF_3CHCHCF_3$	cis-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexaflouro-2-butene	A1	5.4	13,000	87	500	—

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283m³

a. Degrees of hazard are for health, fire, and reactivity, respectively, in accordance with NFPA 704.

b. Reduction to 1-0-0 is allowed if analysis satisfactory to the code official shows that the maximum concentration for a rupture or full loss of refrigerant charge would not exceed the IDLH, considering both the refrigerant quantity and room volume.

c. The ASHRAE Standard 34 flammability classification for this refrigerant is 2L, which is a subclass of Class 2.

d. Class I ozone depleting substance; prohibited for new installations.

e. Occupational Exposure Limit based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, the TERA WEEL or consistent value on a time-weighed average (TWA) basis (unless noted C for ceiling) for an 8 hr/d and 40 hr/wk.

1103.2 Occupancy classification. Locations of refrigerating systems are described by *occupancy* classifications that consider the ability of people to respond to potential exposure to refrigerants. Where *equipment* or *appliances*, other than piping, are located outside a building and within 20 feet (6096 mm) of any building opening, such *equipment* or *appliances* shall be governed by the *occupancy* classification of the building. *Occupancy* classifications shall be defined as follows:

1. Institutional *occupancy* is that portion of premises from which occupants cannot readily leave without the assistance of others because they are disabled, debilitated or confined. Institutional *occupancies* include, among others, hospitals, nursing homes, asylums and spaces containing locked cells.

2. Public assembly *occupancy* is that portion of premises where large numbers of people congregate and from which occupants cannot quickly vacate the space. Public assembly *occupancies* include, among others, auditoriums, ballrooms, classrooms, passenger depots, restaurants and theaters.

3. Residential *occupancy* is that portion of premises that provides the occupants with complete independent living facilities, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. Residential *occupancies* include, among others, dormitories, hotels, multiunit apartments and private residences.
4. Commercial *occupancy* is that portion of premises where people transact business, receive personal service or purchase food and other goods. Commercial *occupancies* include, among others, office and professional buildings, markets (but not large mercantile occupancies) and work or storage areas that do not qualify as industrial *occupancies*.
5. Large mercantile *occupancy* is that portion of premises where more than 100 persons congregate on levels above or below street level to purchase personal merchandise.
6. Industrial *occupancy* is that portion of premises that is not open to the public, where access by authorized persons is controlled, and that is used to manufacture, process or store goods such as chemicals, food, ice, meat or petroleum.
7. Mixed *occupancy* occurs where two or more *occupancies* are located within the same building. Where each *occupancy* is isolated from the rest of the building by tight walls, floors and ceilings and by self-closing doors, the requirements for each *occupancy* shall apply to its portion of the building. Where the various *occupancies* are not so isolated, the *occupancy* having the most stringent requirements shall be the governing *occupancy*.

1103.3.1 Low-probability systems. Double-indirect open-spray systems, indirect closed systems and indirect-vented closed systems shall be classified as low-probability systems, provided that all refrigerant-containing piping and fittings are isolated where the quantities in Table 1103.1 are exceeded.

1104.2 Machinery room. Except as provided in Sections 1104.2.1 and 1104.2.2, all components containing the refrigerant shall be located either outdoors or in a *machinery room* where the quantity of refrigerant in an independent circuit of a system exceeds the amounts shown in Table 1103.1. For refrigerant blends not listed in Table 1103.1, the same requirement shall apply where the amount for any blend component exceeds that indicated in Table 1103.1 for that component. This requirement shall also apply where the combined amount of the blend components exceeds a limit of 69,100 parts per million (ppm) by volume. *Machinery rooms* required by this section shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with Section 1105 for Group A1 and B1 refrigerants and in accordance with Sections 1105 and 1106 for Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants.

Exceptions:

1. *Machinery rooms* are not required for *listed equipment* and *appliances* containing not more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant, regardless of the refrigerant's safety classification, where installed in accordance with the *equipment's* or *appliance's* listing and the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Piping in compliance with Section 1107 is allowed in other locations to connect components installed in a *machinery room* with those installed outdoors.

1104.2.1 Institutional occupancies. The amounts shown in Table 1103.1 shall be reduced by 50 percent for all areas of institutional *occupancies* except kitchens, laboratories and mortuaries. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 550 pounds (250 kg) in occupied areas or *machinery rooms*.

1104.2.2 Industrial occupancies and refrigerated rooms. This section applies only to rooms and spaces that: are within industrial *occupancies*; contain a refrigerant evaporator; are maintained at temperatures below 68°F (20°C); and are used for manufacturing, food and beverage preparation, meat cutting, other processes and storage. Where a *machinery room* would otherwise be required by Section 1104.2, a *machinery room* shall not be required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The space containing the machinery is separated from other *occupancies* by tight construction with tight-fitting doors.
2. Access is restricted to authorized personnel.
3. Refrigerant detectors are installed as required for *machinery rooms* in accordance with Section 1105.3.

   Exception: Refrigerant detectors are not required in unoccupied areas that contain only continuous piping that does not include valves, valve assemblies, *equipment* or *equipment* connections.

4. Surfaces having temperatures exceeding 800°F (427°C) and open flames are not present where any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant is used (see Section 1104.3.4).

5. All electrical *equipment* and *appliances* conform to Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70 where the quantity of any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant in a single independent circuit would exceed 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL) upon release to the space.

6. All refrigerant-containing parts in systems with a total connected compressor power exceeding 100 horsepower (hp) (74.6 kW) except evaporators used for refrigeration or dehumidification, condensers used for heating, control and pressure relief valves for either, low-probability pumps and connecting piping are located either outdoors or in a *machinery room*.

1104.3.1 Air conditioning for human comfort. In other than industrial *occupancies* where the quantity in a single independent circuit does not exceed the amount in Table 1103.1, Group B1, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems for air conditioning for human comfort.

TABLE 1104.3.2
MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE QUANTITIES OF REFRIGERANTS

TYPE OF REFRIGERATION SYSTEM	MAXIMUM POUNDS FOR VARIOUS OCCUPANCIES			
	Institutional	Public assembly	Residential	All other occupancies
Sealed absorption system				
In exit access	0	0	3.3	3.3
In adjacent outdoor locations	0	0	22	22
In other than exit access	0	6.6	6.6	6.6
Unit systems				
In other than exit access	0	0	6.6	6.6

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

1104.3.3 All occupancies. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 1,100 pounds (499 kg) except where *approved*.

1104.3.4 Protection from refrigerant decomposition. Where any device having an open flame or surface temperature greater than 800°F (427°C) is used in a room containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant in a single independent circuit, a hood and exhaust system shall be provided in accordance with Section 510. Such exhaust system shall exhaust *combustion* products to the outdoors.

Exception: A hood and exhaust system shall not be required where any of the following apply:

1. The refrigerant is R-718 (water) or R-744 (carbon dioxide).
2. The *combustion* air is ducted from the outdoors in a manner that prevents leaked refrigerant from being combusted.
3. A refrigerant detector is used to stop the *combustion* in the event of a refrigerant leak (see Sections 1105.3 and 1105.5).

[BF] 1105.1 Design and construction. *Machinery rooms* shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code* and this section.

[F] 1105.3 Refrigerant detector. Refrigerant detectors in *machinery rooms* shall be provided as required by Sections 608.9 and 608.18 of the *International Fire Code*.

1105.5 Fuel-burning appliances. Fuel-burning *appliances* and *equipment* having open flames and that use *combustion* air from the *machinery room* shall not be installed in a *machinery room*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the refrigerant is water (R-718) or carbon dioxide (R-744).
2. Fuel-burning *appliances* shall not be prohibited in the same *machinery room* with refrigerant-containing *equipment* or *appliances* where *combustion* air is ducted from outside the *machinery room* and sealed in such a manner as to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the *combustion* chamber, or where a refrigerant vapor detector is employed to automatically shut off the *combustion* process in the event of refrigerant leakage.

1105.6 Ventilation. *Machinery rooms* shall be mechanically ventilated to the outdoors.

Exception: Where a refrigerating system is located outdoors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any building opening and is enclosed by a penthouse, lean-to or other open structure, natural or mechanical ventilation shall be provided. Location of the openings shall be based on the relative density of the refrigerant to air. The free-aperture cross section for the ventilation of the *machinery room* shall be not less than:

$$F = \sqrt{G} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 11-1)}$$

For SI: $F = 0.138\sqrt{G}$

where:

F = The free opening area in square feet (m^2).

G = The mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.6.1.1 Indoor exhaust opening location. Indoor mechanical exhaust intake openings shall be located where refrigerant leakage is likely to concentrate based on the refrigerant's relative density to air, and the locations of the air current paths and refrigerating machinery.

1105.6.3 Ventilation rate. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be capable of exhausting the minimum quantity of air both at normal operating and emergency conditions, as required by Sections 1105.6.3.1 and 1105.6.3.2. Multiple fans or multispeed fans shall be allowed to produce the emergency ventilation rate and to obtain a reduced airflow for normal ventilation.

[F] 1105.8 Emergency pressure control system. Emergency pressure control systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.11 of the *International Fire Code*.

[BE] 1105.9 Means of egress. *Machinery rooms* larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room. All portions of *machinery rooms* shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1017.1 of the *International Building Code*. Exit and exit access doorways shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware, regardless of the occupant load served. Exit and exit access doorways shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

1106.3 Flammable refrigerants. Where refrigerants of Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 are used, the *machinery room* shall conform to the Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

Exception: *Machinery rooms* for systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that are provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1106.4. □

1106.4 Special requirements for Group A2L refrigerant machinery rooms. *Machinery rooms* with systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that do not conform to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location electrical requirements of NFPA 70, as permitted by the exception to Section 1106.3, shall comply with Sections 1106.4.1 through 1106.4.3.

Exception: *Machinery rooms* conforming to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location classification requirements of NFPA 70 are not required to comply with Sections 1106.4.1 and 1106.4.2.

[F] 1106.4.1 Ventilation system activation. Ventilation shall be activated by the refrigerant detection system in the *machinery room*. Refrigerant detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 608.9 of the *International Fire Code* and all of the following:

1. The detectors shall activate at or below a refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.
2. Upon activation, the detection system shall activate the emergency ventilation system required by Section 1106.4.2.
3. The detection, signaling and control circuits shall be supervised.

1106.4.2 Emergency ventilation system. An emergency ventilation system shall be provided at the minimum exhaust rate specified in ASHRAE 15 or Table 1106.4.2. Shutdown of the emergency ventilation system shall be by manual means.

TABLE 1106.4.2
MINIMUM EXHAUST RATES

REFRIGERANT	Q(m/sec)	Q(cfm)
R32	15.4	32,600
R143	13.6	28,700
R444A	6.46	13,700
R444B	10.6	22,400
R445A	7.83	16,600
R446A	23.9	50,700
R447A	23.8	50,400
R451A	7.04	15,000
R451B	7.05	15,000
R1234yf	7.80	16,600
R1234ze(E)	5.92	12,600

1106.4.3 Emergency ventilation system discharge. The emergency ventilation system point of discharge to the atmosphere shall be located outside of the structure at not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, *ventilation* opening or *exit*.

[F] 1106.5 Remote controls. Remote control of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* located in the *machinery room* shall comply with Sections 1106.5.1 and 1106.5.2.

[F] 1106.5.1 Refrigeration system emergency shutoff. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an approved tamper-resistant cover shall provide off-only control of refrigerant compressors, refrigerant pumps, and normally closed, automatic refrigerant valves located in the *machinery room*. Additionally, this *equipment* shall be automatically shut off whenever the refrigerant vapor concentration in the *machinery room* exceeds the vapor detector's upper detection limit or 25 percent of the LEL, whichever is lower.

[F] 1106.5.2 Ventilation system. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an approved tamper-resistant cover shall provide on-only control of the *machinery room* ventilation fans.

[F] 1106.6 Emergency signs and labels. Refrigeration units and systems shall be provided with *approved* emergency signs, charts, and labels in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 1107
PIPING MATERIAL

1107.1 Piping. Refrigerant piping material for other than R-717 (ammonia) systems shall conform to the requirements in this section. Piping material and installations for R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems shall comply with IIAR 2.

1107.2 Used materials. Used pipe, fittings, valves and other materials that are to be reused shall be clean and free from foreign materials and shall be approved for reuse.

1107.3 Materials rating. Materials, joints and connections shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the refrigerant system. Materials shall be suitable for the type of refrigerant and type of lubricant in the refrigerant system. Magnesium alloys shall not be used in contact with any halogenated refrigerants. Aluminum, zinc, magnesium and their alloys shall not be used in contact with R-40 (methyl chloride).

1107.4 Piping materials standards. Refrigerant pipe shall conform to one or more of the standards listed in Table 1107.4. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1107.4
REFRIGERANT PIPE

PIPING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum tube	ASTM B210/ASTM B210M, ASTM B491/B491M
Brass (copper alloy) pipe	ASTM B43
Copper linesets	ASTM B280, ASTM B1003
Copper pipe	ASTM B42, ASTM B302
Copper tube[a]	ASTM B68, ASTM B75, ASTM B88, ASTM B280, ASTM B819
Steel pipe[b]	ASTM A53, ASTM A106
Steel tube	ASTM A254, ASTM A334

a. Soft annealed copper tubing larger than $1^{3}/_{8}$ inch (35 mm) O.D. shall not be used for field-assembled refrigerant piping unless it is protected from mechanical damage.
b. ASTM A53, Type F steel pipe shall not be used for refrigerant lines having an operating temperature less than -20°F (-29°C).

1107.4.1 Steel pipe Groups A2, A3, B2, and B3. The minimum weight of steel pipe for Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall be Schedule 80 for sizes $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches or less in diameter.

1107.5 Pipe fittings. Refrigerant pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to one of more of the standards *listed* in Table 1107.5 or shall be *listed* and *labeled* as complying with UL 207.

TABLE 1107.5
REFRIGERANT PIPE FITTINGS

FITTING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum	ASTM B361
Brass (copper alloy)	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.24
Copper	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.18, ASME B16.22, ASME B16.24, ASME B16.26, ASME B16.50
Steel	ASTM A105, ASTM A181, ASTM A193, ASTM A234, ASTM A420, ASTM A707

1107.5.1 Copper brazed field swaged. The minimum and maximum cup depth of field-fabricated copper brazed swaged fitting connections shall comply with Table 1107.5.1.

TABLE 1107.5.1
COPPER BRAZED SWAGED CUP DEPTHS

FITTING SIZE (inch)	MINIMUM DEPTH (inch)	MAXIMUM DEPTH (inch)
1/8	0.15	0.23
3/16	0.16	0.24
1/4	0.17	0.26
3/8	0.20	0.30
1/2	0.22	0.33
5/8	0.24	0.36
3/4	0.25	0.38
1	0.28	0.42
1 1/4	0.31	0.47
1 1/2	0.34	0.51
2	0.40	0.60
2 1/2	0.47	0.71
3	0.53	0.80
3 1/2	0.59	0.89
4	0.64	0.96

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1107.6 Valves. Valves shall be of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material, refrigerants and oils in the system. Valves shall be *listed* and *labeled* and rated for the temperatures and pressures of the refrigerant systems in which the valves are installed.

1107.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors and expansion and vibration control devices shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use in refrigerant systems.

SECTION 1108
JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1108.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the refrigerant system when tested in accordance with Section 1110.

1108.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between dissimilar metallic piping materials shall be made with a dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to dielectric tests of ASSE 1079. Adapter fittings with threaded ends between different materials shall be joined with thread lubricant in accordance with Section 1108.3.4.

1108.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1108.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1108.4 through 1108.9, the preparation and installation of brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1108.3.1 through 1108.3.5.

1108.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required by the braze filler metal manufacturer. The piping being brazed shall be purged of air to remove the oxygen and filled with one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. The piping system shall be pre-purged with an inert gas for a minimum time corresponding to five volume changes through the piping system prior to brazing. The pre-purge rate shall be at a minimum velocity of 100 feet per minute (0.508 m/s). The inert gas shall be directly connected to the tube system being brazed to prevent the entrainment of ambient air. After the pre-purge, the inert gas supply shall be maintained through the piping during the brazing operation at a minimum pressure of 1.0 psi (6.89 kPa) and a maximum pressure of 3.0 psi (20.67 kPa). The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1108.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1108.3.2.1 Flared joints. Flared fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The flared fitting shall be used with the tube material specified by the fitting manufacturer. The flared tube end shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1108.3.2.2 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1108.3.3 Soldered joints. Joint surfaces to be soldered shall be cleaned and a flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. Solder joints shall be limited to refrigerant systems using Group A1 refrigerant and having a pressure of less than or equal to 200 psi (1378 kPa).

1108.3.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.1, ASME B1.13M, ASME B1.20.1 or ASME B1.20.3. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or thread tape shall be applied on the external threads only and shall be approved for application on the piping material.

1108.3.5 Welded joints. Joint surfaces to be welded shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1108.4 Aluminum tube. Joints between aluminum tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.5 Brass (copper alloy) pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.6 Copper pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.7 Copper tube. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect or soldered joints.

1108.8 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints, threaded, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.9 Steel tube. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be flared, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

SECTION 1109
REFRIGERANT PIPE INSTALLATION

1109.1 General. Refrigerant piping installations, other than R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems, shall comply with the requirements of this section. The design of refrigerant piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.5.

1109.2 Piping location. Refrigerant piping shall comply with the installation location requirements of Sections 1109.2.1 through 1109.2.7. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2L and B2L shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.3. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.4.

1109.2.1 Minimum height. Exposed refrigerant piping installed in open spaces that afford passage shall be not less than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.

1109.2.2 Refrigerant pipe enclosure. Refrigerant piping shall be protected by locating it within the building elements or within protective enclosures.

Exception: Piping protection within the building elements or protective enclosure shall not be required in any of the following locations:

1. Where installed without ready access or located more than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.
2. Where located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the refrigerant unit or *appliance*.
3. Where located in a *machinery room* complying with Section 1105.

1109.2.3 Prohibited locations. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in any of the following locations:

1. Exposed within a fire-resistance-rated exit access corridor.
2. Within an interior exit stairway.
3. Within an interior exit ramp.
4. Within an exit passageway.
5. Within an elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object.

1109.2.4 Piping in concrete floors. Refrigerant piping installed in concrete floors shall be encased in pipe, conduit or ducts. The piping shall be protected to prevent damage from vibration, stress and corrosion.

1109.2.5 Refrigerant pipe shafts. Refrigerant piping that penetrates two or more floor/ceiling assemblies shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure. The fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Systems using R-718 refrigerant (water).
2. Piping in a direct system using Group A1 refrigerant where the refrigerant quantity does not exceed the limits of Table 1103.1 for the smallest occupied space through which the piping passes.
3. Piping located on the exterior of the building where vented to the outdoors.

1109.2.6 Exposed piping surface temperature. Exposed piping with ready access having surface temperatures greater than 120°F (49°C) or less than 5°F (-15°C) shall be protected from contact or shall have thermal insulation that limits the exposed insulation surface temperature to a range of 5°F (-15°C) to 120°F (49°C).

1109.2.7 Pipe identification. Refrigerant pipe located in areas other than the room or space where the refrigerating *equipment* is located shall be identified. The pipe identification shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) on the refrigerant piping or pipe insulation. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). The identification shall indicate the refrigerant designation and safety group classification of refrigerant used in the piping system. For Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Risk of Fire or Explosion. Flammable Refrigerant." For any Group B refrigerant, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Toxic Refrigerant."

1109.3 Installation requirements for Group A2L or B2L refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.3.1 and 1109.3.2.

1109.3.1 Pipe protection. In addition to the requirements of Section 305.5, aluminum, copper and steel tube used for Group A2L and B2L refrigerants and located in concealed locations where tubing is installed in studs, joists, rafters or similar member spaces, and located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, shall be continuously protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.46 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the tube plus the area extending not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond both sides of the tube.

1109.3.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall be naturally or mechanically ventilated. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Naturally ventilated shafts shall have a pipe, duct or conduit not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter that connects to the lowest point of the shaft and extends to the outdoors. The pipe, duct or conduit shall be level or pitched downward to the outdoors. Mechanically

ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity in accordance with Table 1109.3.2. The mechanical ventilation shall be continuously operated or activated by a refrigerant detector. Systems utilizing a refrigerant detector shall activate the mechanical ventilation at a maximum refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit of the refrigerant. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.

TABLE 1109.3.2
SHAFT VENTILATION VELOCITY

CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SHAFT (square inches)	MINIMUM VENTILATION VELOCITY (feet per minute)
≤ 20	100
> 20 ≤ 250	200
> 250 ≤ 1,250	300
> 1,250	400

For SI: 1 square inch = 645 mm^2, 1 foot per minute = 0.0058 m/s.

1109.4 Installation requirements for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.4.1 and 1109.4.2.

1109.4.1 Piping material. Piping material for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant located inside the building, except for *machinery rooms*, shall be copper pipe, brass pipe or steel pipe. Pipe joints located in areas other than the *machinery room* shall be welded. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled equipment* or *appliances* shall have piping material based on the listing requirements.

1109.4.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall be continuously mechanically ventilated. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity as specified in Table 1109.3.2. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.

1109.5 Refrigerant pipe penetrations. The annular space between the outside of a refrigerant pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or opening in a building envelope wall, floor or ceiling assembly penetrated by a refrigerant pipe shall be sealed in an *approved* manner with caulking material or foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Refrigerant pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.

1109.6 Stress and strain. Refrigerant piping shall be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from vibration, expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

1109.7 Condensate control. Refrigerating piping and fittings that, during normal operation, will reach a surface temperature below the dew point of the surrounding air, and are located in spaces or areas where condensation has the potential to cause a safety hazard to the building occupants, structure, electrical *equipment* or any other *equipment* or *appliances*, shall be insulated or protected in an *approved* manner to prevent damage from condensation.

1109.8 Stop valves. Stop valves shall be installed in specified locations in accordance with Sections 1109.8.1 and 1109.8.2. Stop valves shall be supported in accordance with Section 1109.8.3 and identified in accordance with Section 1109.8.4.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.
2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumping out the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed refrigerant recovery *equipment*.

3. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled* systems.

1109.8.1 Refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant. Stop valves shall be installed in the following locations on refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant:

1. The suction inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
2. The discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
3. The outlet of each liquid receiver.

1109.8.2 Refrigerating systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant. In addition to stop valves required by Section 1109.8.1, systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant shall have stop valves installed in the following locations:

1. Each inlet of each liquid receiver.
2. Each inlet and each outlet of each condenser where more than one condenser is used in parallel.

Exceptions:

1. Stop valves shall not be required at the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit nor at the inlet of a receiver that is an integral part of the condenser.
2. Systems utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors.

1109.8.3 Stop valve support. Stop valves shall be supported to prevent detrimental stress and strain on the refrigerant piping system. The piping system shall not be utilized to support stop valves on copper tubing or aluminum tubing 1 inch (25.4 mm) outside diameter or larger.

1109.8.4 Identification. Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Where valves are identified by a numbering or lettering system, legend(s) or key(s) for the valve identification shall be located in the room containing the indoor refrigeration *equipment*. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

1109.9 Pipe Supports. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

SECTION 1110
REFRIGERATION PIPING SYSTEM TEST

1110.1 General. Refrigerant piping systems, other than R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems, that are erected in the field shall be pressure tested for strength and leak tested for tightness, in accordance with the requirements of this section, after installation and before being placed in operation. Tests shall include both the high- and low-pressure sides of each system.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled equipment*, including compressors, condensers, vessels, evaporators, gas bulk storage tanks, safety devices, pressure gauges and control mechanisms, shall not be required to be tested.

1110.2 Exposure of refrigerant piping system. Refrigerant pipe and joints installed in the field shall be exposed for visual inspection and testing prior to being covered or enclosed.

1110.3 Test gases. The medium used for pressure testing the refrigerant system shall be one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. For R-744 refrigerant systems, carbon dioxide shall be allowed as the test medium. For R-718 refrigerant systems, water shall be allowed as the test medium. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as a test medium. Systems erected on the premises with tubing not exceeding $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) outside diameter shall be allowed to use the refrigerant identified on the nameplate label or marking as the test medium.

1110.4 Test apparatus. The means used to pressurize the refrigerant piping system shall have on its outlet side a test pressure measuring device and either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure-reducing device. The test pressure measuring device shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent or less of the test pressure and shall have a resolution of 5 percent or less of the test pressure.

1110.4.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

1110.5 Piping system pressure test and leak test. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested as a whole or separate tests shall be conducted for the low-pressure side and high-pressure side of the piping system. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested in accordance with both of the following methods:

1. The system shall be pressurized for a period of not less than 60 minutes to not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be the pressure *listed* on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. Additional test gas shall not be added to the system after the start of the pressure test. The system shall not show loss of pressure on the test pressure measuring device during the pressure test. Where using refrigerant as a test medium in accordance with Section 1110.3, the test pressure shall be not less than the saturation dew point pressure at 77°F (25°C).
2. A vacuum of 500 microns shall be achieved. After achieving a vacuum, the system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump. The system pressure shall not rise above 1,500 microns for a period of not less than 10 minutes.

1110.5.1 Joints and refrigerant-containing parts in air ducts. Joints and all refrigerant-containing parts of a refrigerating system located in an air duct of an air-conditioning system that conveys conditioned air to and from human-occupied spaces shall be tested at a pressure of 150 percent of the higher of the design pressure or pressure relief device setting.

1110.5.2 Limited charge systems. Limited charge systems with a pressure relief device, erected on the premises, shall be tested at a pressure not less than one and one-half times the pressure setting of the relief device. *Listed* and *labeled* limited charge systems shall be tested at the *equipment* or *appliance* design pressure.

1110.6 Booster compressor. Where a compressor protected by a pressure relief device is used as a booster to obtain an intermediate pressure, and such compressor discharges into the suction side of another compressor, the booster compressor shall be considered to be a part of the low-pressure side of the system.

1110.7 Centrifugal/nonpositive displacement compressors. Where testing systems using centrifugal or other nonpositive displacement compressors, the entire system shall be considered to be the low-pressure side for test purposes.

1110.8 Contractor or engineer declaration. The installing contractor or *registered design professional* of record shall issue a certificate of test to the code official for all systems containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the test date, name of the refrigerant, test medium and the field test pressure applied to the high-pressure side and the low-pressure side of the system. The certification of test shall be signed by the installing contractor or *registered design professional a*nd shall be made part of the public record.

[F] SECTION 1111
PERIODIC TESTING

[F] 1111.1 Testing required. ~~Deleted.~~The following emergency devices and systems shall be periodically tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and as required by the code official:

1. Treatment and flaring systems.
2. Valves and appurtenances necessary to the operation of emergency refrigeration control boxes.
3. Fans and associated *equipment* intended to operate emergency ventilation systems.
4. Detection and alarm systems.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 12 addresses the piping systems used in heating and cooling systems. Such piping typically conveys water, water and antifreeze solutions, steam and condensate. The fluids conveyed are heated or cooled by boilers, chillers and heat pumps, which are all components of HVAC systems.*~~

TABLE 1202.4
HYDRONIC PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM D1527; ASTM F2806
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC)	ASTM F2855
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tube (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B135; ASTM B251
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	ASTM F1281; CSA CAN/CSA-B-137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing	ASTM F876; ASTM F3253; CSA B137.5
Ductile iron pipe	AWWA C115/A21.15; AWWA C151/A21.51
Lead pipe	FS WW-P-325B
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe	ASTM F2389
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254

TABLE 1202.5
HYDRONIC PIPE FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Copper and copper alloys	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.24; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.51; ASSE 1061; ASTM F1974
CPVC	ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F438; ASTM F439
Ductile iron and gray iron	ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10; ASTM A395; ASTM A536; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548; AWWA C153/A21.53
Ductile iron	ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53
Gray iron	ASTM A126
Malleable iron	ASME B16.3
PE-RT fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18

PEX fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F3253
Plastic	ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM D2846; ASTM F877; ASTM F2389; ASTM F2735
Steel	ASME B16.5; ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM A53; ASTM A106; ASTM A234; ASTM A395; ASTM A420; ASTM A536; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548

1203.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1203.4 through 1203.13, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, soldered, solvent-cemented, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1203.3.1 through 1203.3.8.2.

1203.3.3 Soldered joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

1203.3.4 Solvent-cemented joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. An *approved* primer shall be applied to CPVC and PVC pipe-joint surfaces. Joints shall be made while the cement is wet. Solvent cement conforming to the following standards shall be applied to all joint surfaces:

1. ASTM D2235 for ABS joints.
2. ASTM F493 for CPVC joints.
3. ASTM D2564 for PVC joints.

CPVC joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2846.

Exception: For CPVC pipe joint connections, a primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe or fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

1203.5 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.6 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3, flared joints conforming to Section 1203.6.1, push-fit joints conforming to Section 1203.6.2 or *press-connect joints* conforming to Section 1203.6.3.

1203.6.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1203.6.2 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.6.3 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.7 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.8 CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipes or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.9 Polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall be mechanical joints conforming to Section 1203.3 or heat-fusion joints conforming to Section 1203.9.1.

1203.9.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D3309.

1203.10 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.10.1 through 1203.10.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.10.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.10.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1203.10.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PEX tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

1203.11 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.12 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.13 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.14 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 1203.14.1 and 1203.14.2.

1203.14.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electro-fusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

1203.14.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.15 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.15.1 through 1203.15.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.15.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.15.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1203.15.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PE-RT tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

1203.16 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/ polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.16.1 and 1203.16.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.16.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.16.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

1203.17 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.17.1 and 1203.17.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.17.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.17.2 PEX-AL-PEX-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PEX-AL-PEX pipe.

1205.1.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a hydronic system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices and similar *equipment*.

1208.1 General. Hydronic piping systems shall be tested hydrostatically at one and one-half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 psi (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes.

Exception: For PEX piping systems, testing with a compressed gas shall be an alternative to hydrostatic testing where compressed air or other gas pressure testing is specifically authorized by all of the manufacturers' instructions for the PEX pipe and fitting products installed at the time the system is being tested, and compressed air or other gas testing is not otherwise prohibited by applicable codes, laws or regulations outside of this code.

1208.2 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

1209.3 Embedded joints. Joints of pipe or tubing that are embedded in a portion of the building, such as concrete or plaster, shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1209.3.1 through 1209.3.5.

1209.3.3 Polybutylene joints. Polybutylene pipe and tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by heat fusion in accordance with Section 1203.9.1.

1209.3.5 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) joints. PEX tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by hydronic fittings listed in Table 1202.5.

1209.5 Insulation and thermal break required. Radiant floor heating systems shall be provided with insulation and a thermal break in accordance with Sections 1209.5.1 and 1209.5.2. Insulation *R*-values for slab-on-grade and suspended floor installation shall be in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

Exception: Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

1209.5.1 Thermal break required. A thermal break shall be provided consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

1209.5.2 Insulation material marking. Insulating materials utilized in radiant floor heating systems shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

TABLE 1210.4
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F714; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

TABLE 1210.5
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE FITTINGS

PIPE MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F1282; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

1210.6.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square and be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1210.6.4 through 1210.6.8, the preparation and installation of mechanical and thermoplastic-welded joints shall comply with Sections 1210.6.3.1 and 1210.6.3.2.

1210.7.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a ground-source loop system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices, and similar *equipment*.

1210.8 Installation. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 and the manufacturer's instructions.

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 13 is devoted to fuel oil piping and fuel oil storage related to heating appliances, power generators and similar equipment/appliances. The requirements focus on preventing fuel leaks and equipment failures that could result in severe fire hazards.*~~

1301.2 Storage and piping systems. Fuel oil storage systems shall comply with Section 603.3 of the *International Fire Code*. Fuel oil piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this code.

~~**Exception:** Fuel oil storage tanks for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall comply with Section 1309.~~

1301.3 Fuel type. An *appliance* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which it will be connected. Such *appliance* shall not be converted from the fuel specified on the rating plate for use with a different fuel without securing reapproval from the code official.~~See Section 301.12.~~

1301.4 Fuel tanks, piping, fittings and valves. The tank, piping, fittings and valves for *appliances* burning oil shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter. Where an oil burner is served by a tank, any part of which is above the level of the burner inlet connection and where the fuel supply line is taken from the top of the tank, an *approved* antisiphon valve or other siphon-breaking device shall be installed in lieu of the shutoff valve.

TABLE 1302.3
FUEL OIL PIPING AND FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Copper or copper-alloy pipe and fittings	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302; ASTM F3226
Copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings (Type K, L or M)	ASME B16.51; ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B280; ASTM F3226
Labeled pipe	(See Section 1302.4)
Nonmetallic pipe	ASTM D2996
Steel and stainless steel pipe and fittings	ASTM A53; ASTM A106; ASTM A312; ASTM F3226
Steel and stainless steel tubing and fittings	ASTM A254; ASTM A269; ASTM A539; ASTM F3226

1302.4 Nonmetallic pipe. Nonmetallic pipe shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids. Nonmetallic pipe shall be installed only outdoors, underground.

1302.8 Flexible connectors and hoses. Flexible connectors and hoses shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids.

1302.9 Piping systems. Above-ground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1369. Underground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 971A.

1303.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between different metallic piping materials shall be made with *approved* dielectric fittings or copper-alloy converter fittings.

1303.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1303.4 through 1303.9, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, threaded, press-connect and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1303.3.1 through 1303.3.5.

1303.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1303.3.5 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

1303.4 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.5 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or *press-connect joints* complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.6 Nonmetallic pipe. Joints between nonmetallic pipe or fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the *labeled* pipe and fittings.

1303.7 Steel and stainless steel pipe. Joints between steel or stainless steel pipe or fittings shall be threaded, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3 or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.7.1.

1303.7.1 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Mechanical joints shall be installed outdoors, underground, unless otherwise *approved*.

1303.8 Steel and stainless steel tubing. Joints between steel or stainless steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.9 Piping protection. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion, contraction, jarring and vibration. Piping other than tubing, connected to underground tanks, except straight fill lines and test wells, shall be provided with flexible connectors, or otherwise arranged to permit the tanks to settle without impairing the tightness of the piping connections.

1305.1 Size. The fuel oil system shall be sized for the maximum capacity of fuel oil required. The minimum size of a supply line shall be $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) outside diameter tubing. The minimum size of a return line shall be $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing shall have 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) nominal and 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) minimum wall thickness.

1305.2 Protection of pipe, equipment and appliances. Fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and *appliances* shall be protected from physical damage.

1305.2.1 Flood hazard. Fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and *appliances* located in flood hazard areas shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

1305.8 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be sealed and protected in an *approved* manner in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

1306.2 Test wells. Test wells shall not be installed inside buildings. For outdoor service, test wells shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1306.5 Gauge glass. A tank used in connection with any oil burner shall not be equipped with a glass gauge or any gauge that, when broken, will permit the escape of oil from the tank.

1307.4 Fuel-oil heater relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the discharge line of fuel-oil-heating *appliances*.

1308.1.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

SECTION 1309
OIL TANKS FOR ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES

1309.1 Materials. Supply tanks shall be listed and labeled and shall conform to UL 142 for above-ground tanks, UL 58 for underground tanks, and UL 80 for inside tanks.

1309.2 Above-ground tanks. The maximum amount of fuel oil stored above ground or inside of a building shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The supply tank shall be supported on rigid noncombustible supports to prevent settling or shifting.

1309.2.1 Tanks with buildings. Supply tanks for use inside of buildings shall be of such size and shape to permit installation and removal from dwellings as whole units. Supply tanks larger than 10 gallons (38 L) shall be placed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any fire or flame either within or external to any fuel-burning appliance.

1309.2.2 Outside above-ground tanks. Tanks installed outside above ground shall be a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) from an adjoining property line. Such tanks shall be protected from the weather and from physical damage.

1309.3 Underground tanks. Excavations for underground tanks shall not undermine the foundations of existing structures. The clearance from the tank to the nearest wall of a basement, pit or property line shall not be less than 1 foot (305 mm). Tanks shall be set on and surrounded with noncorrosive inert materials such as clean earth, sand or gravel well tamped in place. Tanks shall be covered with not less than 1 foot (305 mm) of earth. Corrosion protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 1309.8.

1309.4 Multiple tanks. Cross connection of two supply tanks shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1309.7.

1309.5 Oil gauges. Inside tanks shall be provided with a device to indicate when the oil in the tank has reached a predetemined safe level. Glass gauges or a gauge subject to breakage that could result in the escape of oil from the tank shall not be used.

1309.6 Flood-resistant installation. In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1) of the *International Residential Code*, tanks shall be installed at or above the design flood elevation established in Section R324 of the *International Residential Code* or shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the design flood.

1309.7 Cross connection of tanks. Cross connection of supply tanks, not exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) of aggregate capacity, with gravity flow from one tank to another, shall be acceptable provided that the two tanks are on the same horizontal plane.

1309.8 Corrosion protection. Underground tanks and buried piping shall be protected by corrosion-resistant coatings or alloys or fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

CHAPTER 14
SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEMS

~~**User note:**~~

~~***About this chapter:*** *Chapter 14 addresses solar thermal systems, not photovoltaic systems. The provisions are intended to protect property and life from the hazards associated with high-temperature liquids, pressurized systems and toxic fluids. There are also provisions to protect the building structure and the solar thermal system components from damage.*~~

1401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of solar thermal systems, *equipment* and *appliances* intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating.

1401.4 Solar thermal equipment and appliances. Solar thermal *equipment* and *appliances* shall conform to the requirements of this chapter and ICC 900/SRCC 300. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1401.4.1 Collectors and panels. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

SECTION 1402
DESIGN AND INSTALLATION

1402.1 General. The design and installation of solar thermal systems shall comply with Sections 1402.1 through 1402.8. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.2 Access. Access shall be provided to solar thermal *equipment* for maintenance. Solar thermal systems and appurtenances shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of any doors, windows or other building components requiring operation or access. Roof-mounted solar thermal *equipment* shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of roof-mounted *equipment*, *appliances*, chimneys, roof hatches, smoke vents, skylights and other roof penetrations and openings.

1402.3 Pressure and temperature. Solar thermal system components containing pressurized fluids shall be protected against pressures and temperatures exceeding design limitations with pressure and temperature relief valves or pressure relief valves. System components shall have a working pressure rating of not less than the setting of the pressure relief device.

1402.3.1 Relief device. Each section of the system in which excessive pressures are capable of developing shall have a relief device located so that a section cannot be valved off or otherwise isolated from a relief device. Relief valves shall comply with the requirements of Section 1006.6. For indirect solar systems, pressure relief valves in solar loops shall also comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.3.2 Vacuum. System components that might be subjected to a vacuum while in operation or during shutdown shall be designed to withstand such vacuum or shall be protected with vacuum relief valves.

1402.4 Protection from freezing. System components shall be protected from damage by freezing of heat transfer liquids at the lowest ambient temperatures that will be encountered during the operation of the system. Freeze protection shall be provided in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300. Drain-back systems shall be installed in compliance with Section 1402.4.1 and systems utilizing freeze-protection valves shall comply with Section 1402.4.2.

1402.4.1 Drain-back systems. Drain-back systems shall be designed and installed to allow for manual gravity draining of fluids from areas subject to freezing to locations not subject to freezing, and air filling of the components and piping. Such piping and components shall maintain a horizontal slope in the direction of flow of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope). Piping and components subject to manual gravity draining shall permit subsequent air filling upon drainage and air storage or venting upon refilling.

1402.4.2 Freeze-protection valves. Freeze-protection valves shall discharge in a manner that does not create a hazard or structural damage.

1402.5 Protection of potable water. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution or any other type of heating system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.5.1 through 1402.5.3 as applicable.

1402.5.1 Indirect systems. Water supplies of any type shall not be connected to the solar heating loop of an indirect solar thermal hot water heating system. This requirement shall not prohibit the presence of inlets or outlets on the solar heating loop for the purposes of servicing the fluid in the solar heating loop.

1402.5.2 Direct systems for potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats potable water for a potable water distribution system, the pipe, fittings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the system shall comply with the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*.

1402.5.3 Direct systems for other than potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats water for a system other than a potable water distribution system, a potable water supply connected to such system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1402.6 Protection of equipment. Solar thermal *equipment* exposed to vehicular traffic shall be installed not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the finished floor.

Exception: This section shall not apply where the *equipment* is protected from motor vehicle impact.

1402.7 Protection of structure. In the process of installing or repairing any part of a solar thermal system, the building or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with Sections 302, 1402.7.1 and 1402.7.2.

1402.7.1 Controlling condensation. Where attics or structural spaces are part of a passive solar system, ventilation of such spaces, as required by Section 406, is not required where other *approved* means of controlling condensation are provided.

1402.7.2 Penetrations. Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects in accordance with Section 302.

1402.8 Equipment. The solar thermal system shall be equipped in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1402.8.1 through 1402.8.5.3.

1402.8.1 Collectors and panels. Solar collectors and panels shall comply with Sections 1402.8.1.1 through 1402.8.1.4.

1402.8.1.1 Design. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

1402.8.1.2 Rooftop-mounted solar thermal collectors and systems. The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof-mounted solar collectors. Where mounted on or above the roof covering, the collector array, mounting systems and their attachments to the roof shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood conforming to the *International Building Code* to the extent required for the type of roof construction of the building to which the collectors are accessory.

1402.8.1.3 Collectors as roof covering. Roof-mounted solar collectors that also serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Exception: The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* light-transmitting plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in Section 2609 of the *International Building Code*.

1402.8.1.4 Collector sensors. Collector sensor installation, sensor location and the protection of exposed sensor wires from degradation shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300, NFPA 70 and the collector manufacturer's instructions.

1402.8.2 Ducts. Ducts utilized in solar heating and cooling systems shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

1402.8.2.1 Filtering. Air transported to occupied spaces through dust-producing materials by means other than natural convection shall be filtered before entering the occupied space in accordance with Section 605.

1402.8.3 Piping. Potable piping shall be installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*. Hydronic piping shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 12 of this code. Mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1402.8.3.1 Piping insulation. Piping shall be insulated in accordance with the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code*. Exterior insulation shall be protected from degradation. The entire solar loop shall be insulated. Where split-style insulation is used, the seam shall be sealed. Fittings shall be fully insulated. Insulation shall comply with Section 1204.1.

Exceptions:

1. Those portions of the piping that are used to help prevent the system from overheating shall not be required to be insulated.
2. Those portions of piping that are exposed to solar radiation, made of the same material as the solar collector absorber plate and covered in the same manner as the solar collector absorber, or that are used to collect additional solar energy, shall not be required to be insulated.
3. Piping in solar thermal systems using unglazed solar collectors to heat a swimming pool shall not be required to be insulated.

1402.8.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be approved for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1402.8.4.1 Double-wall heat exchangers. Heat exchangers utilizing a nonfood-grade fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An air gap open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. The discharge location from the double-wall heat exchanger shall be visible.

1402.8.4.2 Single-wall heat exchangers. Food-grade fluids shall be used as the heat transfer fluid in singlewall heat exchangers.

1402.8.5 Water heaters and hot water storage tanks. Auxiliary water heaters, boilers and water storage tanks associated with solar thermal systems shall comply with Chapter 10 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.5.1 Hot water storage tank insulation. Hot water storage tanks shall be insulated and such insulation shall have an *R*-value of not less than R-12.5.

1402.8.5.2 Outdoor locations. Storage tanks and heating *equipment* installed in outdoor locations shall be designed for outdoor installation.

1402.8.5.3 Storage tank sensors. Storage tank sensors shall comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.6 Solar loop. Solar loops shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.8.6.1 and 1402.8.6.2.

1402.8.6.1 Solar loop isolation. Valves shall be installed to allow the solar loop to be isolated from the remainder of the system.

1402.8.6.2 Drain and fill valve caps. Drain caps shall be installed on drain and fill valves.

1402.8.7 Expansion tanks. Liquid single-phase solar energy systems shall be equipped with expansion tanks sized in accordance with Section 1009, except that additional expansion tank acceptance volume equal to the total volume of liquid contained in the installed solar collectors and piping above the collectors shall be included.

1403.1 Flash point. The flash point of the heat transfer fluid utilized in a solar system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum nonoperating (no-flow) temperature of the fluid attained in the collector.

1403.2 Heat transfer fluids. Heat transfer gases and liquids shall be rated to withstand the system's maximum design temperature under operating conditions without degradation. Heat transfer fluids shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1403.3 Food-grade additives. Any food-grade fluid used as a heat transfer fluid containing additives shall be third-party listed by an approved agency to the appropriate section of the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186.

1403.4 Toxicity. The use of toxic fluids shall comply with Title 15 of the Federal Hazardous Substances Act and Chapter 60 of the *International Fire Code*.

1403.5 Flammable gases and liquids. A flammable liquid or gas shall not be utilized as a heat transfer fluid. The flash point of liquids used in *occupancies* classified in Group H or F shall not be lower unless *approved*.

SECTION 1404
LABELING

1404.1 Collectors. Factory-built solar thermal collectors shall bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and serial number or certification number.

1404.2 Water storage tanks. Pressurized water storage tanks shall bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and address, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures, and storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating pressures. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the water storage tanks.

1404.3 Fluid safety labeling. Drain and fill valves shall be labeled with a description and warning that identifies the fluid in that loop as "Potable Water," "Food-Grade Fluid," "Nonfood-Grade Fluid" or "Toxic." Labeling shall also be provided that reads as follows: "Fluid could be discharged at high temperature or pressure or both. Unauthorized alterations to this system could result in a health hazard or a hazardous condition."

1404.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers shall be labeled to indicate the heat exchanger type with one of the following:

1. "Single-wall without leak protection."
2. "Double-wall without leak protection."
3. "Double-wall with leak protection."

CHAPTER 15
REFERENCED STANDARDS

User note:

About this chapter: *This code contains numerous references to standards that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard.This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document.*

The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206

ANSI/ACCA 1 Manual D—2016

Residential Duct Systems
601.5, 603.2

ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS—2010 RA 2017

HVAC Design for Swimming Pools and Spas
403.2.1

ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA 183—2007 (reaffirmed 2014)

Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
312.1

~~Manual J Residential Load Calculations, Eighth Edition . . . . . 312~~
~~Manual S Residential Equipment Selection, Second Edition . . . . . 312~~

AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating & Refrigeration Institute
2311 Wilson Blvd., Suite 400
Arlington, VA 22201

700—2017

with Addendum 1: Specifications for Refrigerants
1102.2.2.3

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

230—15

Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Circulating Fans for Rating and Certification
930.1

ANSI/AMCA 210—16/ANSI/ASHRAE 51—16

Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.3.2.5

ANSI/AMCA 550—15 (Rev. 09/18)

Test Method for High Velocity Wind Driven Rain Resistant Louvers
401.5, 501.3.2

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

Z21.1/CSA 1.1—2016

Household Cooking Gas Appliances
505.2

Z21.8—1994 (R2017)

Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners
919.1

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

15—2019

Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.1, ~~1101.6, 1105.8,~~ 1106.4.2, ~~1108.1~~

34—2019

Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
~~202,~~ 1102.2.1, 1103.1, Table 1103.1

62.1—2019

Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
~~401.2,~~ 403.3.1.1.2.3, 403.3.1.1.2.3.2

~~**90.1—2016**~~

~~**Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**~~
~~401.2~~

170—2017

Ventilation of Health Care Facilities
407.1, 601.2

~~**180—2018**~~

~~**Standard Practice for Inspection and Maintenance of Commercial Building HVAC Systems**~~
~~102.3~~

ANSI/AMCA 210–ANSI/ASHRAE 51—16

Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.3.2.5

ASHRAE—2017

ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook
603.2

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

A112.4.1—2009 (R2019)

Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes
1006.6

B1.1—2003

Unified Inch Screw Threads, UN and UNR Thread Form
1108.3.4

B1.13M—2006

Metric Screw Threads: M Profile
1108.3.4

B1.20.1—2013(R2018)

Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
1108.3.4, 1203.3.5, 1303.3.3

B1.20.3—1976

Dryseal Pipe Threads, Inch
1108.3.4

B16.3—2016

Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 & 300
Table 1202.5

B16.5—2017

Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 through NPS 24
Table 1202.5

B16.9—2019

Factory-made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
Table 1202.5

B16.11—2016

Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded
Table 1202.5

B16.15—2018

Cast Alloy Threaded Fittings: Classes 125 and 250
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.18—2018

Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
513.13.1, Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.22—2018

Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
513.13.1, Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.24—2016

Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500 and 2500
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.26—2018

Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes

Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.28—1994

Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
Table 1202.5

B16.50—2018

Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-joint Pressure Fittings
Table 1107.5

B16.51—2018

Copper and Copper Alloy Press-connect Pressure Fittings
Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

B31.5—2019

Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
1109.1

B31.9—2020

Building Services Piping
1201.3

BPVC—2019

ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code—07 Edition
1003.1, 1004.1, 1009.2, 1011.1

CSD-1—2018

Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers
1004.1

ASSE

ASSE International
18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220
Mokena, IL 60448

1017—2009

Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Values for Hot Water Distribution Systems
1002.2.2

1061—2015

Performance Requirements for Push Fit Fittings
Table 1202.5, 1203.10.3, 1203.15.3

1079—2005

Performance Requirements for Dielectric Pipe Unions
1108.1.1

ASSP

American Society of Safety Professionals
520 N. Northwest Highway
Park Ridge, IL 60068

ANSI/ASSP Z359.1—2020

The Fall Protection Code
304.11

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

A53/A53M—2018

Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated, Welded and Seamless
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A105/A105M—18

Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
Table 1107.5

A106/A106M—2018

Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-temperature Service
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A126—04(2014)

Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings
Table 1202.5

A181/A181M—14

Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-purpose Piping
Table 1107.5

A193/A193M—19

Standard Specification for Alloy-steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
Table 1107.5

A234/A234M—18A

Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~**A240/A240M—17**~~

~~**Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications**~~
~~Table 1302.3~~

A254—2010(2018)

Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

A269—15

Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
Table 1302.3

A312—2018

Standard Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
Table 1302.3

A334/A334M—04a(2016)

Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Carbon and Alloy-steel Tubes for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.4

A395/A395M—99(2014)

Standard Specification for Ferritic Ductile Iron Pressure-retaining Castings for Use at Elevated Temperatures

Table 1202.5~~, Table 1302.3~~

A420/A420M—2016

Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

A536—84(2014)

Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
Table 1202.5

A539—99

Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines
Table 1302.3

A707/A707M—19

Standard Specification for Forged Carbon and Alloy Steel Flanges for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.5

B32—08(2014)

Specification for Solder Metal
1108.3.3, 1203.3.3

B42—15a

Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
513.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B43—15

Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
513.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B68/B68M—11

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed
Table 1107.4, 513.13.1

B75/B75M—11

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B88—2016

Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
513.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B135/B135M—17

Specification for Seamless Brass Tube
Table 1202.4

B210/B210M—12

Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes
Table 1107.4

B251/B251M—2017

Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube
513.13.1, Table 1202.4

B280—2018

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
513.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1302.3

B302—2017

Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B361—16

Standard Specification for Factory-made Wrought Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Welding Fittings
Table 1107.5

B491/B491M—15

Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Extruded Round Tubes for General-purpose Applications
Table 1107.4

B813—2016

Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
1108.3.3, 1203.3.3

B819—2018

Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems
Table 1107.4

B828—2016

Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
1203.3.3

B1003—16

Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Linesets
Table 1107.4

C315—2007(2016)

Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
801.16.1, Table 803.10.4

C411—2017

Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation
602.2.1.8, 604.3

D56—2016A

Test Method for Flash Point by Tag Closed Cup Tester
202

D93—18

Test Method for Flash Point of Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester
202

D1527—99(2005)

Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4

~~**D1693—15**~~

~~**Test Method for Environmental Stress-cracking of Ethylene Plastics**~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

D1785—15E1

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

D2235—2004(2016)

Specifications for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

D2241—15

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~**D2282—99(2005)**~~

~~**Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)**~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

D2412—11(2018)

Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading
603.8.3

D2464—15

Standard Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

D2466—2017

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

D2467—15

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

D2564—2012(2018)

Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
1203.3.4

D2657—2007(2015)

Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings
~~Table 1210.5~~1210.6.6.1

D2683—14

Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

D2737—12a

Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
Table 1210.4

D2846/D2846M—2017BE1

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.3.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

D2996—2017

Specification for Filament-wound Fiberglass (Glass Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe
Table 1302.3

D3035—15

Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

D3261—2016

Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing

Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

D3278—96(2011)

Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-cup Apparatus
202

D3309—96a(2002)

Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
~~Table 1202.4~~1203.9.1

E84—2018B

Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
202, 510.8, 602.2, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.6, 602.2.1.7, 602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

E119—2018B

Test Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
607.3.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, 607.6.2

E136—2019

Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C
202

E814—2013A(2017)

Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

E1509—2012(2017)

Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type
904.1

E2231—2018

Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

E2336—16

Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems
506.3.6, 506.3.11.2, 506.5.2

F437—15

Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

F438—2017

Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F439—13

Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F441/F441M—15

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F442/F442M—13e1

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F493—14

Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

F714—13

Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

F876—2018A

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F877—2018A

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
~~Table 1202.4,~~ Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F1055—2016A

Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Cross linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.2

F1281—2017

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4

F1282—2017

Standard Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

F1476—07(2013)

Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5, 1203.3.7

F1548—2001(2018)

Standard Specification for the Performance of Fittings for Use with Gasketed Mechanical Couplings Used in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5

F1807—2018

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F1924—12

Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing
1210.6.6.3

F1960—2018

Specification for Cold-expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F1974—09(2015)

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Poly ethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.5

F2080—16

Specification for Cold-expansion Fittings with Metal Compression-sleeves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F2098—2015

Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F2159—2018

Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F2389—2017A

Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene Piping Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.14.1, ~~1203.16.1,~~ Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5, 1210.6.7.1

F2434—14

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing
Table 1210.5

F2623—14

Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDR9 Tubing
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F2735—2009(2016)

Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F2769—2018

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Tubing and Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

F2806—10(2015)

Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (Metric SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4

F2855—12

Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride)/Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC-AL-CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing
Table 1202.4

F3226—16

Standard Specification for Metallic Press-connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems
Table 1302.3

F3253—2017

Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing with Oxygen Barrier for Hot- and Cold-water Hydronic Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4 , Table 1202.5

A5.8/A5.8—2011-AMD1

Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
1108.3.1, 1203.3.1, 1303.3.1

AWWA

American Water Work Association
6666 West Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235

C110/A21.10—12

Standard for Ductile Iron & Gray Iron Fittings
Table 1202.5

C115/A21.15—11

Standard for Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile Iron or Grey-iron Threaded Flanges
Table 1202.4

C151/A21.51—17

Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast
Table 1202.4

C153/A21.53—11

Standard for Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service
Table 1202.5

C901—16

Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing, 3/4 in. (19 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service
Table 1210.4

~~CPSC~~

~~Consumer Product Safety Commission~~
~~4330 East West Highway~~
~~Bethesda, MD 20814~~

~~**CPSC August 2011**~~

~~**Title 15 of the Federal Hazardous Substance Act**~~
~~202, 1009.1~~

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

ANSI/CSA FC1—2014

Fuel Cell Technologies—Part 3-100: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems—Safety
924.1

ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 Series—16

Design and Installation of Ground Source Heat Pump Systems for Commercial and Residential Buildings
~~Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5,~~ Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5, 1210.8

B137.1—17

Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold-water Pressure Services
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.2—17

Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

B137.3—17

Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

B137.5—17

Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.6—17

Chlorinated Polyvinylchloride (CPVC) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table 1210.5

B137.9—17

Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~**B137.10—17**~~

~~**Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems**~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

B137.11—17

Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.18—17

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature Resistance (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

C22.2 No. 218.1—13(R2017)

Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment
916.1

C22.2 No. 236—15

Heating and Cooling Equipment
916.1

~~**CSA C22.2 No. 60335-2-40:2019**~~
~~**Household And Similar Electrical Appliances - Safety - Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers - 3rd Edition**~~
~~908.1, 918.1, 918.2, 1101.2~~

DOL

U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration
c/o Superintendent of Documents U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, DC 20402-9325

29 CFR Part 1910.1000 (2015)

Air Contaminants
502.6

29 CFR Part 1910.1025 (2015)

Toxic and Hazardous Substances
502.19

FDA

U.S. Food and Drug Administration
10903 New Hampshire Avenue
Silver Springs, MD 20993

FDA Title 15

Federal Hazardous Substances Act
1403.4

FDA Title 21

Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186 (revised as of April 1, 2015)
202, 1403.3

FS

Federal Specifications* General Services Administration
7th & D Streets Specification Section, Room 6039
Washington, DC 20407

WW-P-325B (1976)

Pipe, Bends, Traps, Caps and Plugs; Lead (for Industrial Pressure and Soil and Waste Applications)
Table 1202.4

*Standards are available from the Supt. of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Ave NW 6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

IBC—21

International Building Code®
201.3, 202, 301.15, 301.16, 301.17, 301.18, 301.19, 302.1, 302.2, 304.8, 304.11, 306.5.1, 308.4.2.2, 308.4.2.4, 313.1.6, 401.4, 401.5, 406.1, 501.3.1, 501.3.2, 502.10, 502.10.1, 502.10.2, 504.2, 504.11, 505.3, 505.5, 506.3.3, 506.3.11, 506.3.11.1, 506.3.13.2, 506.4.2, 506.5.2, 509.1, 510.4, ~~510.5.2,~~ ~~510.5.3,~~ 510.6, 510.6.1.1, 510.6.2, 510.6.3, 510.7, ~~511.1.5,~~ 513.1, 513.2, 513.3, 513.4.3, 513.5, ~~513.5.2,~~ 513.5.3, 513.5.3.1, 513.5.3.2, 513.6.2, 513.6.3, 513.10.5, 513.11, 513.11.1, 513.12, 513.12.3, 601.3, 602.2, 602.2.1.6, 602.3, 602.4, 603.1, 603.7, 603.13, 603.18.2, 604.3, ~~607.1.1,~~ 607.1.2, 607.1.2.1, 607.2.1, 607.3.3.1, 607.3.3.2, 607.5.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.3, 607.5.4, ~~607.5.4.1,~~ 607.5.5, 607.5.5.2, 607.5.6, 607.6, 607.6.1, 607.6.2, ~~607.6.2.1,~~ 607.6.3, 701.2, 801.3, 801.16.1, 801.18.4, 801.18.4.1, 902.1, 908.3, 908.4, 910.3, 924.1, 925.1, 926.1, 927.2, 928.1, 1004.6, 1105.1, 1105.9, 1109.2.5, 1109.5, 1206.4, 1210.8.2, 1305.2.1, 1305.8, ~~1402.4, 1402.4.1~~ 1402.8.1.2, 1402.8.1.3

ICC 900/SRCC Standard 300—20

Solar Thermal System Standard
1002.1, 1401.4, 1401.4.1, 1402.1, 1402.3.1, 1402.4, 1402.8.1.1, 1402.8.1.4, 1402.8.5, 1402.8.5.3, 1403.2

ICC 901/SRCC Standard 100—20

Solar Thermal Collector Standard
1401.4.1, 1402.8.1.1

IECC—21

International Energy Conservation Code®
301.2, 303.3, 312.1, 401.2, 514.1, 603.8.2, 604.1, 1204.1, 1204.2, 1209.5, 1402.8.3.1

IFC—21

International Fire Code®

201.3, 310.1, 311.1, 502.4, ~~502.5,~~ 502.7.2, 502.8.1, 502.9.1, 502.9.5, 502.9.5.2, 502.9.5.3, 502.9.8.2, 502.9.8.3, 502.9.8.5, 502.9.8.6, 502.9.11, 502.10, 502.10.1, 502.10.3, 502.16.2.2, 505.3, 509.1, 510.2.1, 510.2.2, 510.4, 511.1, 511.1.1, 511.1.5, 513.1, 513.2, 513.6.3, 513.12.1, 513.12.3, 513.12.4, 513.15, 513.16, 513.17, 513.18, 513.19, 606.2.1, 606.4.1, 908.7, 924.1, 926.1, 1101.8, 1105.3, 1105.8, 1106.4.1, 1106.6, 1301.1, 1301.2, 1301.5, 1403.4

IFGC—21

International Fuel Gas Code®

101.2, 201.3, 301.6, 701.1, 801.1, 901.1, 906.1, 926.1, 1101.5

IPC—21

International Plumbing Code®

201.3, 301.11, 307.2.2, 512.2, 908.5, 928.1, 1002.1, 1002.2, 1002.3, 1005.2, 1006.6, 1008.2, 1009.3, 1101.4, 1201.1, 1206.2, 1206.3, 1210.8.1, 1401.2, 1402.5.2, 1402.5.3, 1402.8.3

IRC—21

International Residential Code®

101.2

IIAR

International Institute of Ammonia Refrigeration
1001 N. Fairfax Street, Suite 503
Arlington, VA 22314

ANSI/IIAR 2—2014, Including Addendum A

Safe Design of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems

1101.1.2, ~~1101.6,~~ ~~1105.6.3~~ 1107.1

ANSI/IIAR 3—2017

Ammonia Refrigeration Valves

1101.1.2 ~~1101.6~~

ANSI/IIAR 4—2020

Installation of Closed-circuit Ammonia Mechanical Refrigeration Systems

1101.1.2 ~~1101.6~~

ANSI/IIAR 5—2019

Startup of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems

1101.1.2 ~~1101.6~~

MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.
127 Park Street, NE
Vienna, VA 22180

SP 58—2009

Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application and Installation

305.4

NAIMA

North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
11 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 103
Alexandria, VA 22314

AH116—09

Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards
603.5, 603.9

NBBI

National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors
1055 Crupper Avenue
Columbus, OH 43229-1183

NBIC—2017

National Board Inspection Code, Part 3
1003.3

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

2—2020

Hydrogen Technologies Code
502.16.1

30A—21

Code for Motor Fuel-dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages
304.6

31—20

Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment
701.1, 801.2.1, 801.18.1, 801.18.2, 920.2, 922.1, 1308.1

37—18

Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines
915.1, 915.2

58—20

Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code
502.9.10

69—19

Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems
510.8.3

70—20

National Electrical Code
~~301.7, 306.3.1, 306.4.1,~~ 511.1.1, 513.11, 513.12.2, ~~602.2.1.1,~~ 927.2, 1104.2.2, 1106.3, 1106.4, 1402.8.1.4

72—19

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
606.3

80—19

Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
607.4.1.2

82—19

Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment

601.1

85—19

Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code
1004.1

91—20

Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists and Noncombustible Particulate Solids
502.9.5.1, 502.17

92—18

Standard for Smoke Control Systems
513.7, 513.8

96—2021

Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
507.1

99—21

Health Care Facilities Code
407.1

105—19

Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives
607.4.1.2

211—19

Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances
806.1

262—19

Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-handling Spaces
602.2.1.1

286—19

Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth
602.2.1.6

704—17

Standard System for Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response
502.8.4, 510.1, Table 1103.1

720—15
Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment
313.5.1, 313.5.2, 313.6

853—20

Standard on Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems
924.1

NSF

NSF International
789 N. Dixboro Road P.O. Box 130140
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

~~**14—2017**~~

~~**Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials**~~

~~301.4~~

358-1—2017

Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

358-2—2017

Polypropylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

358-3—2016

Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4 , Table 1210.5

358-4—2018

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4 , Table 1210.5

SMACNA

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Inc.
4201 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

SMACNA—2010

Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, 7th Edition
603.5, 603.9

SMACNA—2015

SMACNA Phenolic Duct Construction Standards, 1st Edition (ANSI)
603.5.2

SMACNA/ANSI—2011

Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards, 2nd Edition
510.8.1

SMACNA/ANSI—2013

Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards, 3rd Edition
510.8.1

SMACNA/ANSI—006-2020

HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible, 4th Edition (ANSI)
603.4, Table 603.4, 603.9, 603.10

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

17—2008

Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with revisions through September 2013
803.6

~~**58—96 Standard for Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids** . . . . . 1309~~
~~**80—09 Standard for Steel Tanks for Oil-burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids** . . . . . 1309~~

103—2010

Factory-built Chimneys, Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with revisions through March 2017
805.2

109—97

Tube Fittings for Flammable and Combustible Fluids, Refrigeration Service and Marine Use
Table 1101.2

127—2011

Factory-built Fireplaces—with revisions through July 2016
805.3, 903.1, 903.3, 903.4

~~**142—10 Standard for Steel Above-ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids** . . . . . 1309~~

174—04

Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through December 2016
1002.1

180—2012

Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids—with revisions through May 2017
1306.4

181—05

Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through April 2017
512.2, 603.5, 603.6.1, 603.6.2, 603.9, 604.13

181A—2013

Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through March 2017
603.9

181B—2013

Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through March 2017
504.9.2, 603.9

197—10

Commercial Electric Cooking Appliances—with revisions through January 2018
917.1

207—2009

Refrigerant-containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical—with revisions through June 2014
Table 1101.2, 1107.5

217—2015 Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with revisions through November 2016
313.4.4

263—2011

Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials—with revisions through March 2018
607.3.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, 607.6.2~~.1~~

268—2016

Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems—with revisions through July 2016
313.5.3, 606.1

268A—2008

Smoke Detectors for Duct Application—with revisions through August 2016
606.1

343—2017

Pumps for Oil-burning Appliances
1302.7

378—2006

Draft Equipment—with revisions through September 2013
804.3, 804.3.8

391—2010

Solid-fuel and Combination-fuel Central and Supplementary Furnaces—with revisions through June 2014
918.1

412—2011

Refrigeration Unit Coolers—with revisions through August 2018
Table 1101.2

427—11

Standard for Refrigerating Units
Table 1101.2

471—2010

Commercial Refrigerators and Freezers—with revisions through November 2018
Table 1101.2

474—15

Standard for Dehumidifiers
Table 1101.2

484—14

Standard for Room Air Conditioners
Table 1101.2

499—2014

Electric Heating Appliances—with revisions through February 2017
912.1, 923.1

507—2017

Electric Fans—with revisions through August 2018
505.2, 930.1

508—2018

Industrial Control Equipment
307.2.3

~~**536—2014**~~

~~**Flexible Metallic Hose**~~
~~1302.8~~

555—06

Fire Dampers—with revisions through October 2016
607.3.1

555C—2014

Ceiling Dampers—with revisions through May 2017
607.3.1

555S—2014

Smoke Dampers—with revisions through October 2018
607.3.1

586—2009

High-efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter Units—with revisions through December 2017
605.2

641—2010

Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with revisions through April 2018
802.1

705—2017

Power Ventilators—with revisions through October 2018
504.5

710—2012

Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with revisions through June 2018
507.1, 507.2.6

710B—2011

Recirculating Systems—with revisions through August 2014
507.1, 507.2

723—2018

Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
202, 510.8, 602.2, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.6, 602.2.1.7, 602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

726—95

Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with revisions through October 2013
~~916.1,~~ 1004.1

727—2018

Oil-fired Central Furnace
918.1

729—2003

Oil-fired Floor Furnaces—with revisions through November 2016
910.1

730—2003

Oil-fired Wall Furnaces—with revisions through November 2016
909.1

731—2018

Oil-fired Unit Heaters
920.1

732—2018

Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters
1002.1

737—2011

Fireplace Stoves
905.1

762—2013

Outline of Investigation for Power Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances
506.5.1, 506.5.2

791—2006

Residential Incinerators—with revisions through November 2014
907.1

834—04

Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers Electric—with revisions through September 2018
1004.1

842—2015

Valves for Flammable Fluids—with revisions through May 2015
1307.1

858—2014

Household Electric Ranges—with revisions through June 2018
505.2, 917.1

864—2014

Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems—with revisions through October 2018
513.12

867—2011

Electrostatic Air Cleaners—with revisions through August 2018
605.2

875—2009

Electric Dry Bath Heater—with revisions through September 2017
914.2

896—1993

Oil-burning Stoves—with revisions through November 2016
917.1, 922.1

900—2015

Air Filter Units
605.2

907—2016

Fireplace Accessories
902.2

923—2013

Microwave Cooking Appliances—with revisions through July 2017
505.2, 917.1

959—2010

Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with revisions through June 2014
805.6

971A—2006

Outline of Investigation for Metallic Underground Fuel Pipe
1302.9

1046—2010

Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts—with revisions through April 2017
507.2.8

1240—2005

Electric Commercial Clothes-Drying Equipment—with revisions through March 2018
913.1

1261—2016

Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with revisions through September 2017
916.1

1369—18

Standard for Aboveground Piping for Flammable and Combustible Liquids
1302.9

1370—11

Unvented Alcohol Fuel Burning Decorative Appliances—with revisions through March 25, 2016
929.1

1453—2016

Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through May 2018
1002.1

1479—2015

Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

1482—2011

Solid-fuel Type Room Heaters—with revisions through August 2015
905.1

1563—2009

Standard for Electric Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment—with revisions through October 2017
916.1

1618—2015

Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors and Hearth Extensions—with revisions through January 2018
~~308.4.1,~~ 903.2, 905.3

1777—2007

Chimney Liners—with revisions through April 2014
801.16.1, 801.18.4

1812—2013

Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators—with revisions through July 2018
514.1

1815—2012

Nonducted Heat Recovery—with revisions through July 2018
514.1

1820—2004

Fire Test of Pneumatic Tubing for Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through July 2017
602.2.1.3

1887—04

Fire Tests of Plastic Sprinkler Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through July 2017
602.2.1.2

1978—2010

Grease Ducts—with revisions through April 2017
506.3.1.1, 506.3.2, 506.3.6

1995—2015

Heating and Cooling Equipment—with revisions through August 2018
908.1, 911.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2, Table 1101.2

1996—2009

Electric Duct Heaters—with revisions through July 2016
911.1, 932.1

2024—2014

Safety Optical-fiber and Communications Cable Raceway—with revisions through August 2015
602.2.1.1

2034—2017 Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with revisions through September 2018
313.4.2, 313.4.4

2043—2013

Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-handling Spaces—with revisions through July 2018
602.2.1.4.2, 602.2.1.5

2075—2013

Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with revisions through December 2017
313.5.1, 313.5.3, 404.1

2158—2018

Electric Clothes Dryers
913.1

2158A—2013

Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct—with revisions through April 2017
504.9.3

2162—2014

Outline of Investigation for Commercial Wood-fired Baking Ovens—Refractory Type
917.1

2200—2012

Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with revisions through October 2015
915.1

2221—2010

Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies
506.3.11.3, 506.5.2

2518—2016

Air Dispersion Systems
603.17

2523—2009

Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating Appliances, Water Heaters, and Boilers—with revisions through March 2018
1002.1, 1004.1

2846—2014

Fire Test of Plastic Water Distribution Plumbing Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through December 2016
602.2.1.7

8782—17

Outline of Investigation for Pollution Control Units for Commercial Cooking
506.5.2

UL/CSA 60335-2-40—2019

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition

908.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2, Table 1101.2

UL/CSA 60335-2-89—17

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-89: Particular Requirements for Commercial Refrigerating Appliances with an Incorporated or Remote Refrigerant Unit or Compressor

Table 1101.2

APPENDIX A

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS

~~(~~This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.~~)~~

User note:

About this appendix: *Appendix A is a depiction of what is prescribed in Table 803.10.4. See Section 803.10.4.*

SECTION A101
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

A101.1 General. See Figures A101.1(1) and A101.1(2) for illustrations of *chimney* connector systems.

APPENDIX B

RECOMMENDED PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE

This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.

User note:

About this appendix: *Appendix B is an example of or recommendation for a mechanical permit fee schedule that can be implemented by an authority having jurisdiction. See Section 107.1.*

Deleted.

SECTION B101
MECHANICAL WORK, OTHER THAN GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

B101.1 Initial fee. For issuing each permit $___

B101.2 Additional fees. Where applicable, additional fees shall be in accordance with Sections B101.2.1 through B101.2.3.

B101.2.1 Mechanical systems. Fee for inspecting heating, ventilating, ductwork, air-conditioning, exhaust, venting, *combustion* air, pressure vessel, solar, fuel oil and refrigeration systems and *appliance* installations shall be $___ for the first $1,000.00, or fraction thereof, of valuation of the installation plus $___ for each additional $1,000.00 or fraction thereof.

B101.2.2 Repairs, alterations and additions. Fee for inspecting repairs, alterations and additions to an existing system shall be $___ plus $___ for each $1,000.00 or fraction thereof.

B101.2.3 Boilers. Fee for inspecting boilers (based upon Btu input):

$_____ 33,000 Btu (1 bhp) to 165,000 (5 bhp)

$_____ 165,001 Btu (5 bhp) to 330,000 (10 bhp)

$_____ 330,001 Btu (10 bhp) to 1,165,000 (52 bhp)

$_____ 1,165,001 Btu (52 bhp) to 3,300,000 (98 bhp)

$_____ Over 3,300,000 Btu (98 bhp)

For SI: 1 British thermal unit = 0.2931 W, 1 bhp = 33,475 Btu/hr.

SECTION B102
FEE FOR REINSPECTION

B102.1 General. If it becomes necessary to make a reinspection of a heating, ventilation, air-conditioning or refrigeration system, or boiler installation, the installer of such *equipment* shall pay a reinspection fee of $___.

SECTION B103
TEMPORARY OPERATION INSPECTION FEE

B103.1 General. When preliminary inspection is requested for purposes of permitting temporary operation of a heating, ventilating, refrigeration, or air-conditioning system, or portion thereof, a fee of $___ shall be paid by the contractor requesting such preliminary inspection. If the system is not *approved* for temporary operation on the first preliminary inspection, the usual reinspection fee shall be charged for each subsequent preliminary inspection for such purpose.

~~SECTION B104~~
~~SELF-CONTAINED UNITS LESS THAN 2 TONS~~

~~**B104.1 General.** In all buildings, except one- and two-family dwellings, where self-contained air-conditioning units of less than 2 tons (7.034 kW) are to be installed, the fee charged shall be that for the total cost of all units combined (see Section B101.2.1 for rate).~~

[A] APPENDIX C

BOARD OF APPEALS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User Notes:

About this appendix: *Appendix C provides criteria for Board of Appeals members. Also provided are procedures by which the Board of Appeals should conduct its business.*

Code development reminder: *Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.*

Deleted.

[A] SECTION C101 GENERAL

[A] C101.1 Scope. A board of appeals shall be established within the jurisdiction for the purpose of hearing applications for modification of the requirements of this code pursuant to the provisions of Section 114 (Means of Appeals). The board shall be established and operated in accordance with this section, and shall be authorized to hear evidence from appellants and the code official pertaining to the application and intent of this code for the purpose of issuing orders pursuant to these provisions.

[A] C101.2 Application for appeal. Any person shall have the right to appeal a decision of the code official to the board. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the intent of this code or the rules legally adopted hereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The application shall be filed on a form obtained from the code official within 20 days after the notice was served.

[A] C101.2.1 Limitation of authority. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

[A] C101.2.2 Stays of enforcement. Appeals of notice and orders, other than Imminent Danger notices, shall stay the enforcement of the notice and order until the appeal is heard by the board.**

[A] C101.3 Membership of board. The board shall consist of five voting members appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction. Each member shall serve for **[NUMBER OF YEARS]** years or until a successor has been appointed. The board member's terms shall be staggered at intervals, so as to provide continuity. The code official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not vote on any matter before the board.

[A] C101.3.1 Qualifications. The board shall consist of five individuals who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

[A] C101.3.2 Alternate members. The chief appointing authority is authorized to appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership, and shall be appointed for the same term or until a successor has been appointed.

[A] C101.3.3 Vacancies. Vacancies shall be filled for an unexpired term in the same manner in which original appointments are required to be made.

[A] C101.3.4 Chairperson. The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

[A] C101.3.5 Secretary. The chief appointing authority shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings, which shall set forth the reasons for the board's decision, the vote of each member, the absence of a member and any failure of a member to vote.

[A] C101.3.6 Conflict of interest. A member with any personal, professional or financial interest in a matter before the board shall declare such interest and refrain from participating in discussions, deliberations and voting on such matters.

[A] C101.3.7 Compensation of members. Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

[A] C101.3.8 Removal from the board. A member shall be removed from the board prior to the end of their term only for cause. Any member with continued absence from regular meeting of the board may be removed at the discretion of the chief appointing authority.

[A] C101.4 Rules and procedures. The board shall establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties consistent with the provisions of this code and applicable state law. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be presented.

[A] C101.5 Notice of meeting. The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic intervals.

[A] C101.5.1 Open hearing. All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant's representative, the code official and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

[A] C101.5.2 Quorum. Three members of the board shall constitute a quorum.

[A] C101.5.3 Postponed hearing. When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant's representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

[A] C101.6 Legal counsel. The jurisdiction shall furnish legal counsel to the board to provide members with general legal advice concerning matters before them for consideration. Members shall be represented by legal counsel at the jurisdiction's expense in all matters arising from service within the scope of their duties.

[A] C101.7 Board decision. The board shall only modify or reverse the decision of the code official by a concurring vote of three or more members.

[A] C101.7.1 Resolution. The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Every decision shall be promptly filed in writing in the office of the code official within three days and shall be open to the public for inspection. A certified copy shall be furnished to the appellant or the appellant's representative and to the code official.

[A] C101.7.2 Administration. The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

[A] C101.8 Court review. Any person, whether or not a previous party of the appeal, shall have the right to apply to the appropriate court for a writ of certiorari to correct errors of law. Application for review shall be made in the manner and time required by law following the filing of the decision in the office of the chief administrative officer.